

# INVARIANT SUBSPACES

LOUIS DE BRANGES

## PREFACE

A linear transformation of a vector space into itself has invariant subspaces if the vector space has finite dimension and is over the field of complex numbers. A vector space over a field which contains the rational numbers is contained in a vector space of the same dimension over the field of complex numbers. A linear transformation extends uniquely from a vector space over the rational numbers to a vector space over the complex numbers. The essential hypothesis for the construction of invariant subspaces is finite dimensionality of the vector space. Results in infinite dimensions can be generalized when the vector space is over a field which does not contain the rational numbers if polynomials with coefficients in the field can be factored into linear factors.

A linear transformation of a vector space of finite dimension into itself has computable invariant subspaces when the vector space is over the field of complex numbers. The transformation is iterated to define monomial functions of the transformation. Polynomial functions of the transformation are defined as linear combinations with complex coefficients of monomial functions. The commutative algebra of polynomial functions of the transformation is the homomorphic image of the algebra of all polynomials with complex coefficients.

The kernel of the homomorphism contains a nonzero element since an algebra of infinite dimension over the complex numbers is mapped onto an algebra of finite dimension over the same field. Since the kernel is an ideal which contains a nonzero element, it contains a nonzero element of least degree. A nonzero polynomial of least degree in the ideal is a divisor of every nonzero polynomial in the ideal. The essentially unique minimal polynomial determines invariant subspaces with special properties. The subspaces are defined by factors of the minimal polynomial.

The invariant subspace defined by a divisor of the minimal polynomial is the set of elements of the Hilbert space which are annihilated by the function of the transformation defined by the polynomial. The subspace is an invariant subspace for every linear transformation of the vector space into itself which commutes with the given transformation. Every subspace which is an invariant subspace for every linear transformation of the space into itself which commutes with the given transformation is defined by a divisor of the minimal polynomial.

These invariant subspaces were known to Gauss who treated them as valuable in themselves. Previous discoveries of invariant subspaces were partial results subordinated to other purposes.

An invariant subspace theory for linear transformations of a vector space of infinite dimension into itself appears in the Stieltjes treatment of integration for functions of a real variable. The factorization of a polynomial with complex coefficients as a product of linear factors is again applied.

A polynomial  $P(z)$  in the complex variable  $z$  has nonnegative values on the real line if, and only if,

$$P(z) = Q^*(z)Q(z)$$

for a polynomial  $Q(z)$  in  $z$  where the conjugate polynomial

$$Q^*(z) = Q(z^-)^-$$

has coefficients which are complex conjugates of the corresponding coefficients of  $Q(z)$ .

A linear functional on polynomials is said to be nonnegative if it has nonnegative values on polynomials whose values on the real line are nonnegative.

A nonnegative linear functional on polynomials is said to be positive if it does not annihilate all polynomials.

If a positive linear functional on polynomials annihilates some nonzero polynomial whose values on the real line are nonnegative, then a nonzero polynomial  $S(z)$  of least degree exists such that the linear functional annihilates

$$S^*(z)S(z).$$

The polynomial

$$S(z) = S^*(z)$$

can be chosen self-conjugate and has only real simple zeros. The linear functional annihilates

$$Q^*(z)Q(z)$$

if, and only if, the polynomial

$$Q(z) = S(z)P(z)$$

belongs to the ideal generated by  $S(z)$ .

A scalar product is defined on polynomials whose degree is less than the degree of  $S(z)$  by

$$\langle P(t), Q(t) \rangle = L(Q^*P)$$

where the dummy variable  $t$  is applied in anticipation of the computation of the linear functional  $L$  by integration over the real line. The scalar product is defined for all polynomials  $P(z)$  and  $Q(z)$  when the linear functional annihilates no nonzero polynomial with nonnegative values on the real line.

Stieltjes shows that a positive linear functional  $L$  on polynomials is represented by an integral

$$L(P) = \int P(t)d\mu(t)$$

over the real line with respect to a nondecreasing function  $\mu(t)$  of real  $t$ . When the linear functional annihilates some nonzero polynomial with nonnegative values on the real line, the nondecreasing function is constant in every interval containing no zero of the minimal polynomial  $S(z)$ . The integral is a sum over the zeros of  $S(z)$ .

Stieltjes integration is clarified by Lebesgue. A measure is a function of subsets of the real line. A nondecreasing function  $\mu(t)$  of real  $t$  defines a measure whose value on an open interval  $(a, b)$  is  $\mu(b) - \mu(a)$  if the function is continuous on the right at  $a$  and continuous on the left at  $b$ . The measure is extended so that its value on a countable union of disjoint sets is the sum of the measures of the sets. The class of Baire subsets of the real line is the smallest class of subsets which contains the open intervals, which contains every countable union of sets of the class, and which contains every complement of a set of the class. A measure obtains a definition on every Baire subset.

The extension of a measure to larger classes of sets eventually encounters the obstacle that there is no definition of a subset of the real line. A line according to Euclid is a plane figure divided into two parts by the omission of a point. Essentially the same definition is applied by Dedekind in a definition which derives expected properties of a line.

Cantor treated subsets of a line axiomatically assuming only that they can be well-ordered. The cardinality of a set is then a measure of size. The real line as a continuum has the same cardinality as the class of all subsets of the set of nonnegative integers. The continuum hypothesis asserts that the cardinality of the continuum is the least possible cardinality of an uncountable set.

A problem of Banach concerns the nature of a bounded nonnegative measure which is defined on all subsets of a continuum. Banach conjectures the existence of a countable subset of the line whose complement has zero measure. Integration with respect to such a measure is a sum.

Banach verifies his conjecture in joint work with Kuratowski when the continuum hypothesis is satisfied. But Paul Cohen shows that the cardinality of the continuum is not determined in an axiomatic treatment of subsets. Different definitions of subsets create different cardinalities for the number of subsets. The measure problem was not solved in an axiomatic context.

The solution [4] of the measure problem verifies the expectations of Banach. A nonnegative measure defined on the Baire subsets of the continuum can be extended to all subsets only when the extension is trivial: The extended measure vanishes on the complement of a countable set. The solution and the present monograph are written for the largest possible class of readers.

Hilbert reformulates the Stieltjes integration theory as a construction of invariant subspaces for self-adjoint transformations with domain and range in a Hilbert space. The

definition of invariant subspace needs to be clarified since a self-adjoint transformation need not be everywhere defined. The subspaces are invariant subspaces for every continuous transformation of the Hilbert space into itself which commutes with the given self-adjoint transformation. An invariant subspace is constructed for every Baire subset of the real line. The projection of the Hilbert space onto the subspace is treated as the value of a measure on the Baire set. The self-adjoint transformation is an integral with respect to the measure.

In the original context due to Stieltjes the Hilbert space is the space of square integrable functions with respect to the measure defined by the nondecreasing function of a real variable. The transformation takes  $f(x)$  into  $xf(x)$  whenever these functions of  $x$  represent elements of the Hilbert space.

Another invariant subspace theory is generated by the Stieltjes integration theory. A representing measure for a positive linear functional on polynomials need not be unique when the linear functional annihilates no nonzero polynomial with nonnegative values on the real line. When measures are not unique, the polynomials are dense in a Hilbert space of entire functions whose scalar product is defined by the integral

$$\langle F(t), G(t) \rangle = \int G^*(t)F(t)d\mu(t)$$

for all elements  $F(z)$  and  $G(z)$  of the space for every nondecreasing function  $\mu(t)$  of real  $t$  whose measure represents the positive linear functional on polynomials.

The axiomatic treatment [2] of the spaces prepares an invariant subspace theory. A Stieltjes space of entire functions is a Hilbert space of entire functions which has these properties:

(H1) Whenever a function  $F(z)$  of  $z$  belongs to the space and has a nonreal zero  $w$ , the function

$$F(z)(z - w^-)/(z - w)$$

of  $z$  belongs to the space and has the same norm as  $F(z)$ .

(H2) For every nonreal number  $w$  a continuous linear functional is defined on the space by taking a function  $F(z)$  of  $z$  into its value at  $w$ .

(H3) The conjugate function

$$F^*(z) = F(z^-)^-$$

of  $z$  belongs to the space and has the same norm as the function  $F(z)$  of  $z$ .

A Stieltjes space of entire functions which contains a nonzero element has a reproducing kernel function

$$K(w, z) = [B(z)A(w)^- - A(z)B(w)^-]/[\pi(z - w^-)]$$

for function values at  $w$  which is determined by two self-conjugate entire functions  $A(z)$  and  $B(z)$  of  $z$  which have only real zeros. All properties of the space are determined

by these functions. They determine all nondecreasing functions of a real variable whose measure computes scalar products of elements of the space by integration.

An invariant subspace theory applies to the difference–quotient transformation, taking a function  $F(z)$  of  $z$  into the function

$$[F(z) - F(0)]/z$$

of  $z$ , when the transformation is everywhere defined.

A transformation appears in the Stieltjes integration theory which was discovered by Hilbert when a positive linear functional on polynomials has a unique representing measure. A generalization of the transformation appears when the representing measure is not unique.

A Hilbert transformation is an isometric transformation of a Stieltjes space of entire functions into a Stieltjes space of entire functions which commutes with the difference–quotient transformation. The transformation is defined whenever the difference–quotient transformation takes a given Stieltjes space of entire functions into itself.

When the domain of the Hilbert transformation is a Stieltjes space of entire functions defined by entire functions  $A(z)$  and  $B(z)$ , then the range of the Hilbert transformation is a Stieltjes space of entire functions defined by entire functions  $C(z)$  and  $D(z)$  such that the matrix

$$M(z) = \begin{pmatrix} A(z) & B(z) \\ C(z) & D(z) \end{pmatrix}$$

has determinant one.

The graph of the Hilbert transformation is a Hilbert space whose scalar product is the Cartesian product scalar product of the scalar products of component spaces. When the Cartesian product is realized as column vectors with upper entry in the domain and lower entry in the range, the space has matrix reproducing kernel function

$$[M(z)IM(w)^{-} - I]/[2\pi(z - w^{-})]$$

for function values at  $w$ . The bar denotes the conjugate transpose of a matrix and

$$I = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

is a matrix analogue of the imaginary unit  $i$  of the complex plane.

The elements of the Hilbert space are pairs of entire functions which are treated as vector–valued entire functions. The matrix  $M(z)$  of entire functions is treated as a matrix–valued entire functions.

The spaces of vector–valued entire functions are assembled on multiplication of defining matrix–valued entire functions. If  $M(a, z)$  and  $M(b, z)$  are defining matrix–valued entire

functions, then the space defined by  $M(a, z)$  is contained isometrically in the space defined by  $M(b, z)$  if, and only if,

$$M(b, z) = M(a, z)M(a, b, z)$$

for a suitable defining matrix-valued entire function  $M(a, b, z)$ . Multiplication by  $M(a, z)$  then acts as an isometric transformation of the space defined by  $M(a, z)$  into the space defined by  $M(b, z)$ .

Suitability means that the inclusion of the space defined by  $M(a, z)$  is otherwise contractive in the space defined by  $M(b, z)$  and multiplication by  $M(a, z)$  is a contractive transformation of the space defined by  $M(a, b, z)$  into the space defined by  $M(b, z)$ . A generalization of orthogonal decompositions appears which is instrumental for the construction of invariant subspaces.

The Stieltjes integration theory is a sequel to a contribution made by Hermite to understanding the Riemann hypothesis. The Riemann conjecture applies to the zeros of an entire function which is not a polynomial. The zeros of a polynomial determine the polynomial within a constant factor. Hermite found a class of entire functions which are determined by their zeros within a less trivial factor which is the exponential of a quadratic polynomial. The entire function to which the Riemann hypothesis applies belongs to the Hermite class.

Stieltjes was prevented by death from tuberculosis from making the natural extension of his integration theory of polynomials to an integration theory of entire functions of Hermite class. The axiomatic treatment [2] of Stieltjes space of entire functions achieves that purpose and consolidates the results of Hardy and Titchmarsh which also are intended for the Riemann hypothesis. Dym and McKean [7] give other applications of Stieltjes spaces of entire functions.

The construction of invariant subspaces by factorization was formalized by Moshe Livšic using another vector space and three other transformations.

The transformation whose invariant subspaces are treated is the main transformation. The vector space mapped into itself by the transformation is the state space. An external coefficient space stores information acquired from the state space. The output maps the state space linearly into the coefficient space. The input maps the coefficient space linearly into the state space. An operator maps the coefficient space linearly into itself.

The transfer function is a power series with operator coefficients defined by composing the input and output transformations with iterates of the main transformation. The  $n$ -th coefficient maps an element of the coefficient space into the state space where it is acted upon  $n$  times by the main transformation and then mapped into the coefficient space by the output transformation.

Alpay and Dym [1] apply the Livšic model to Stieltjes spaces of entire functions. The state space is the graph of the Hilbert transformation. The main transformation is the difference-quotient transformation as it acts on the graph. The coefficient space is the space of column vectors with two entries given the indefinite scalar product

$$\langle a, b \rangle = ib^{-1}Ia.$$

The elements of the state space are power series with coefficients in the coefficient space. The output transformation takes a power series into its constant coefficient. The input transformation is the adjoint of the output transformation. It takes an element  $c$  of the coefficient space into the element

$$[M(z)IM(0)^- - I]c/(2\pi z)$$

of the state space. The transfer function is  $M(z)$ .

There are isomorphic images of the state space as has been seen. The canonical model is a unique isomorphic image which exhibits the main transformation, the output transformation, and the input transformation. The canonical model for Stieltjes spaces of entire functions is constructed by the Hilbert transformation. The canonical model exhibits four linear transformations defining a matrix acting on the Cartesian product of the state space and the coefficient space. The matrices of the Stieltjes theory and of its generalization for the construction of invariant subspaces have isometric adjoints.

Hilbert spaces are satisfactory as state spaces. The use of indefinite scalar products for the coefficient space creates a need for new Banach spaces resembling Hilbert spaces. The axiomatic treatment of the spaces is due to Mark Krein.

A Krein space is a Banach space which is its own dual space with respect to a scalar product compatible with the norm of the Banach space. A convexity property of the norm of the Banach space is required to formulate compatibility.

If  $a$  and  $b$  are elements of the Banach space, the identity

$$\|(1-t)a + tb\|^2 + t(1-t)\|b-a\|^2 = (1-t)\|a\|^2 + t\|b\|^2$$

holds for all numbers  $t$  in the interval  $[0, 1]$ . A theorem of von Neumann states that the Banach space is a Hilbert space with scalar product defined by

$$4\langle a, b \rangle = \|a + b\|^2 - \|a - b\|^2 + i\|a + ib\|^2 - i\|a - ib\|^2.$$

The scalar product defined by the norm is ignored in a Krein space. The given scalar product is required to satisfy a hypothesis satisfied by the Hilbert space scalar product. The hypothesis comes from an analysis of topology in Banach spaces which underlies the Hahn–Banach theorem.

A scalar product for a Banach space is a function  $\langle a, b \rangle$  of elements  $a$  and  $b$  of the space with complex numbers as values. The function is linear in  $a$  for every  $b$ . Interchange of  $a$  and  $b$  conjugates the product. The origin is the only element  $a$  of the space which is annihilated by every  $b$ .

The Banach space has not only a metric topology defined by its norm but also a weak topology defined by duality with itself resulting from a scalar product. The weak topology is the least topology for which the linear functional on the space which takes  $a$  into  $\langle a, b \rangle$  is continuous for every element  $b$  of the space.

The weak topology is required to determine the open convex sets for the metric topology. A convex set is open for the metric topology if, and only if, it is disjoint from the weak closure of every disjoint convex set.

A Krein space has many norms which are equivalent for the definition of its metric topology. When the scalar product is given, the norm can always be chosen so that the space is the orthogonal sum of a Hilbert space and the anti-space of a Hilbert space.

No invariant subspace theory is complete which does not match the invariant subspace theory for linear transformations of a vector space of finite dimension into itself. The objective is to show that every continuous linear transformation of a Hilbert space into itself which is not a constant multiple of the identity transformation admits a proper closed invariant subspace which is also an invariant subspace for every commuting continuous linear transformation of the Hilbert space into itself.

It is sufficient to construct invariant subspaces for contractive linear transformations of a Hilbert space into itself since every continuous linear transformation of the Hilbert space into itself is a constant multiple of a contractive linear transformation. Canonical models of such transformations require coefficient spaces which are Hilbert spaces.

A fundamental case of the invariant subspace theory occurs when the coefficient space is the field of complex numbers with absolute value as norm. The theory was created in joint work with James Rovnyak [5] which originated in a seminar for undergraduates of Lafayette College in the academic year 1958–1959 and was completed in the academic years 1963–1965 when he was in a postdoctoral position at Purdue University. The consistent use of formal power series instead of represented analytic functions facilitates the generalization to an arbitrary Hilbert space as coefficient space.

The generalization was the subject of a seminar at the Courant Institute of Mathematical Sciences in the academic year 1961–1962 which prepared his doctoral dissertation written at Yale University under the supervision of Shizuo Kakutani. His departure from Purdue University left an invariant subspace theory which had not yet reached its goal as a construction of invariant subspaces. In his subsequent career at the University of Virginia he continued research stimulated by the invariant subspace theory in joint work with Marvin Rosenblum [9].

Applications of the invariant subspace theory were a major topic for research by mathematicians who emigrated from the Soviet Union and published in the journal *Integral Equations and Operator Theory* edited by Israel Gohberg. The value of results in engineering funded research and created academic positions. The focus of research was not on fundamental problems of the invariant subspace theory.

A different application of the invariant subspace theory was made in the spring of 1984 during a visit to the Leningrad Steklov Mathematical Institute. A proof of the Bieberbach conjecture was presented to the Leningrad Seminar in Geometric Function Theory. The invariant subspace theory was presented to the Leningrad Seminar in Functional Analysis. The results presented in the seminar in functional analysis are published with commentaries by Nikol'skii and Vasyunin [8] in the proceedings of the international symposium on the



occasion of the proof of the Bieberbach conjecture.

There was no opportunity to present the application of the invariant subspace theory to the proof of the Bieberbach conjecture. Two students of Bieberbach made contributions to the proof. An approach due to Helmut Grunsky leads to an analogue of the invariant subspace theory for contractive transformations with the field of complex numbers as coefficient space. An approach due to Karl Löwner makes an application of the Riemann mapping theorem which bypasses the Grunsky spaces using an ordinary differential equation.

Löwner could not prove the Bieberbach conjecture because there remained a problem of propagating inequalities through a differential equation. The problem is solved by methods of the invariant subspace theory as they apply to the related Grunski theory. Their application to the Löwner theory is made without motivation when the Grunski theory is omitted.

The visit to Leningrad marks a turning point in research on the Riemann hypothesis. There was previously an accumulation of evidence that the Riemann hypothesis is true with no path to a proof indicated. In the course of the visit a conjecture was made which implies the Riemann hypothesis. The thrust of subsequent research is aimed at a proof of the conjecture.

The invariant subspace theory for continuous transformations of a Hilbert space into itself which are not contractive requires a Krein space as coefficient space as has been seen. The theory was presented to the London Mathematical Society at its meeting in Lancaster in March 1993. The present solution of the invariant subspace problem has not been previously published.

There is another application of the invariant subspace theory. The Jacobian conjecture states that a polynomial in several complex variables with complex numbers as coefficients represents an injective mapping of the space of several complex variables if the determinant of its Jacobian matrix of derivatives is identically one.

The proof of the conjecture was a life-long ambition of Shreeham Abhyankar, who obtained the problem from his father. T.-T. Moh was a graduate student at Purdue University when Abhyankar began his career there. Moh claims to have read about the problem in the treatise of Courant Hilbert [6] but is unable to locate the reference confirming his belief that the problem is due to Hilbert. His exposure to the problem in Taiwan decided the choice of Abhyankar as supervisor of his doctoral dissertation.

Moh obtained evidence of the truth of the Jacobian conjecture for polynomials in two variables [10]. His method of proof leaves open a combinatorial problem subject to computer calculation. The conjecture is true for polynomials of total degree less than one hundred.

In the symposium on the occasion of the proof of the Bieberbach conjecture Moh asked whether the methods used in the proof apply to the Jacobian conjecture. The Löwner method is not applicable since there is no Riemann mapping theorem in several complex variable. The Grunski method is applicable when generalized to several complex variables.

The present treatment of the invariant subspace theory prepares the needed generalization to several variables.

## REFERENCES

1. D. Alpay and H. Dym, *Hilbert Spaces of analytic functions, inverse scattering and operator models*; I, *Integral Equations and Operator Theory* **7** (1984), 589–641; and II, **8** (1985), 145–180.
2. L. de Branges, *Hilbert Spaces of Entire Functions*, Prentice Hall, New Jersey, 1968; *Espaces Hilbertiens de Fonctions Entières*, Masson, Paris, 1972.
3. ———, *A proof the Bieberbach conjecture*, *Acta Math.* **154** (1985), 137–152.
4. ———, *The measure problem, preprint* (2016).
5. L. de Branges and J. Rovnyak, *Square Summable Power Series*, Holt, Rinehart & Winston, New York, 1966.
6. R. Courant and D. Hilbert, *Methods of Mathematical Physics*, Wiley, New York, 1953.
7. H. Dym and H.P. McKean, *Gaussian Processes, Function Theory, and the Inverse Scattering Problem*, Academic Press, New York, 1976.
8. N.K. Nikol'skiĭ and V.I. Vasyunin, *Notes on two function models*, The Biberbach Conjecture, Proceedings on the Occasion of the Proof; *Mathematical Surveys and Monographs*, vol. 21, American Mathematical Society, Providence, pp. 113–141.
9. M. Rosembaum and J. Rovnyak, *Hardy Classes and Operator Theory*, Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1985.
10. T.-T. Moh, *On the Jacobian Conjecture and the configuration of roots*, *J. Reine Angew. Math.* **340** (1983), 140–212.

## CONTENTS

- Theorem 1. The model of a contractive transformation
- Theorem 2. Construction of the model Hilbert space
- Theorem 3. Factorization from contractive inclusion
- Theorem 4. The model of the adjoint transformation
- Theorem 5. A canonical factorization
- Theorem 6. The model of commuting transformations
- Theorem 7. Commuting transformations
- Theorem 8. A canonical factorization
- Theorem 9. A convex decomposition
- Theorem 10. Factorization and invariant subspaces
- Theorem 11. Existence of invariant subspaces
- Theorem 12. Characterization of Krein spaces
- Theorem 13. Complementation in Krein spaces
- Theorem 14. Construction of subspaces
- Theorem 15. Factorization of contractive transformations
- Theorem 16. Preservation of complementation
- Theorem 17. Factorization in Krein spaces

Complex numbers are constructed from the Gauss numbers

$$x + iy$$

whose coordinates  $x$  and  $y$  are rational numbers. The addition and multiplication of Gauss numbers is derived in the obvious way from the addition and multiplication of rational numbers and from the defining identity

$$i^2 = -1$$

of the imaginary unit  $i$ . Conjugation is the homomorphism of additive and multiplicative structure which takes

$$z = x + iy$$

into

$$z^- = x - iy.$$

The product

$$z^- z = x^2 + y^2$$

of a nonzero Gauss number and its conjugate is a positive rational number.

The Gauss plane admits topologies which are compatible with addition and multiplication. The Dedekind topology is derived from convex structure.

A convex combination

$$(1 - t)z + tw$$

of elements  $z$  and  $w$  of the Gauss plane is an element of the Gauss plane when  $t$  is a rational number in the interval  $[0, 1]$ . A subset of the Gauss plane is said to be preconvex if it contains all elements of the Gauss plane which are convex combinations of elements of the set. The preconvex span of a subset of the Gauss plane is defined as the smallest preconvex subset of the Gauss plane which contains the given set.

The closure in the Gauss plane of a preconvex subset  $B$  is the set  $B^-$  of elements  $w$  of the Gauss plane such that the set whose elements are  $w$  and the elements of  $B$  is preconvex. The closure of a preconvex set is a preconvex set which is its own closure.

A nonempty preconvex set is defined as open if it is disjoint from the closure of every disjoint nonempty preconvex set. The intersection of two nonempty open preconvex sets is an open preconvex set when it is nonempty.

A subset of the Gauss plane is said to be open if it is a union of nonempty open preconvex sets. The empty set is open since it is an empty union of such sets. Unions of open sets are open. Finite intersections of open sets are open.

An example of an open set is the complement in the Gauss plane of the closure of a nonempty preconvex set. A subset of the Gauss plane is said to be closed if it is the complement in the Gauss plane of an open set. Intersections of closed sets are closed. Finite unions of closed sets are closed. The Gauss plane is a Hausdorff space in the

topology whose open and closed sets are defined by convexity. These open and closed sets define the Dedekind topology of the Gauss plane.

If a nonempty open preconvex set  $A$  is disjoint from a nonempty preconvex set  $B$ , then a maximal preconvex set exists which contains  $B$  and is disjoint from  $A$ . The maximal preconvex set is closed and has a preconvex complement. The existence of the maximal preconvex set is an application of the Kuratowski–Zorn lemma.

Addition and multiplication are continuous as transformations of the Cartesian product of the Gauss plane with itself into the Gauss plane when the Gauss plane is given the Dedekind topology. The complex plane is the completion of the Gauss plane in the uniform Dedekind topology. Uniformity of topology refers to the determination of neighborhoods of a Gauss number by neighborhoods of the origin. If  $A$  is a neighborhood of the origin and if  $w$  is a Gauss number, then the set of sums of  $w$  with elements of  $A$  is a neighborhood of  $w$ . Every neighborhood of  $w$  is derived from a neighborhood of the origin.

A Cauchy class of closed subsets of the Gauss plane is a nonempty class of closed subsets such that the intersection of the members of any finite subclass is nonempty and such that for every neighborhood  $A$  of the origin some member  $B$  of the class exists such that all differences of elements of  $B$  belong to  $A$ .

A Cauchy class of closed subsets is contained in a maximal Cauchy class of closed subsets. A Cauchy sequence is a sequence of elements  $w_1, w_2, w_3, \dots$  of the Gauss plane such that a Cauchy class of closed subsets is defined whose members are indexed by the positive integers  $r$ . The  $r$ -th member is the closed preconvex span of the elements  $w_n$  with  $n$  not less than  $r$ . A Cauchy sequence determines a maximal Cauchy class. Every maximal Cauchy class is determined by a Cauchy sequence.

An element of the Gauss plane determines the maximal Cauchy class of closed sets which contain the element. An element of the complex plane is determined by a maximal Cauchy class. The Gauss plane is a subset of the complex plane.

If  $B$  is a closed subset of the Gauss plane, the closure  $B^-$  of  $B$  in the complex plane is defined as the set of all elements of the complex plane whose maximal Cauchy class has  $B$  as a member. A subset of the complex plane is defined as open if it is disjoint from the closure in the complex plane of every disjoint closed subset of the Gauss plane. Unions of open subsets of the complex plane are open. Finite intersections of open subsets of the complex plane are open. A subset of the Gauss plane is open in the Dedekind topology of the Gauss plane if, and only if, it is the intersection with the Gauss plane of an open subset of the complex plane.

A subset of the complex plane is defined as closed if its complement in the complex plane is open. Intersections of closed subsets of the complex plane are closed. Finite unions of closed subsets of the complex plane are closed. The closure of a subset of the complex plane is defined as the smallest closed set containing the given set. The closure in the Gauss plane of a subset of the Gauss plane is the intersection with the Gauss plane of the closure of the subset in the complex plane.

The complex plane is a Hausdorff space in the topology whose open sets and closed sets

are determined by convexity. These open sets and closed sets define the Dedekind topology of the complex plane.

The Gauss plane is dense in the complex plane. Addition and multiplication admit unique continuous extensions as transformations of the Cartesian product of the complex plane with itself into the complex plane. Conjugation admits a unique continuous extension as a transformation of the complex plane into itself.

Properties of addition in the Gauss plane are preserved in the complex plane. The associative law

$$(\alpha + \beta) + \gamma = \alpha + (\beta + \gamma)$$

holds for all complex numbers  $\alpha, \beta$ , and  $\gamma$ . The commutative law

$$\alpha + \beta = \beta + \alpha$$

holds for all complex numbers  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ . The origin  $0$  of the Gauss plane satisfies the identities

$$0 + \gamma = \gamma = \gamma + 0$$

for every element  $\gamma$  of the complex plane. For every element  $\alpha$  of the complex plane a unique element

$$\beta = -\alpha$$

of the complex plane exists such that

$$\alpha + \beta = 0 = \beta + \alpha.$$

Conjugation is a homomorphism  $\gamma$  into  $\gamma^-$  of additive structure: The identity

$$(\alpha + \beta)^- = \alpha^- + \beta^-$$

holds for all complex numbers  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ .

Multiplication by a complex number  $\gamma$  is a homomorphism of additive structure: The identity

$$\gamma(\alpha + \beta) = \gamma\alpha + \gamma\beta$$

holds for all complex numbers  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ . The parametrization of homomorphisms is consistent with additive structure: The identity

$$(\alpha + \beta)\gamma = \alpha\gamma + \beta\gamma$$

holds for all complex numbers  $\alpha, \beta$ , and  $\gamma$ . Multiplication by  $\gamma$  is the homomorphism which annihilates every element of the complex plane when  $\gamma$  is the origin. Multiplication by  $\gamma$  is the identity homomorphism when  $\gamma$  is the unit  $1$  of the Gauss plane.

The composition of homomorphisms is consistent with multiplicative structure: The associative law

$$(\alpha\beta)\gamma = \alpha(\beta\gamma)$$

holds for all complex numbers  $\alpha, \beta$ , and  $\gamma$ . Multiplication is commutative: The identity

$$\alpha\beta = \beta\alpha$$

holds for all complex numbers  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ . Conjugation is a homomorphism of multiplicative structure: The identity

$$(\alpha\beta)^{-} = \alpha^{-}\beta^{-}$$

holds for all complex numbers  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ .

A real number is a complex number  $\gamma$  which is self-conjugate:

$$\gamma^{-} = \gamma.$$

Sums and products of real numbers are real. A real number is said to be nonnegative if it can be written

$$\gamma^{-}\gamma$$

for a complex number  $\gamma$ . The sum of two nonnegative numbers is nonnegative. A nonnegative number is said to be positive if it is nonzero. A positive number  $\alpha$  has a positive inverse

$$\beta = \alpha^{-1}$$

such that

$$\beta\alpha = 1 = \alpha\beta.$$

A nonzero complex number  $\alpha$  has a nonzero complex inverse

$$\beta = \alpha^{-1}$$

such that

$$\beta\alpha = 1 = \alpha\beta.$$

The complex plane is complete in the uniform Dedekind topology. Cauchy completion produces the same space. Closed and bounded subsets of the complex plane are compact. Boundedness of a set means that the elements  $\alpha$  of the set satisfy the inequality

$$\alpha^{-}\alpha \leq c$$

for some nonnegative number  $c$ . A nonempty class of closed sets has a nonempty intersection if the members of every finite subclass have a nonempty intersection and if some member of the class is bounded.

The space  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  of square summable power series is the set of power series

$$f(z) = a_0 + a_1z + a_2z^2 + \dots$$

with complex coefficients  $a_n$  such that the sum

$$\|f(z)\|^2 = |a_0|^2 + |a_1|^2 + |a_2|^2 + \dots$$

converges. If  $w$  is a complex number, the power series

$$wf(z) = wa_0 + wa_1z + wa_2z^2 + \dots$$

is square summable since the identity

$$\|wf(z)\|^2 = |w|^2\|f(z)\|^2$$

is satisfied. If power series

$$f(z) = a_0 + a_1z + a_2z^2 + \dots$$

and

$$g(z) = b_0 + b_1z + b_2z^2 + \dots$$

are square summable, then the convex combination

$$\begin{aligned} & (1-t)f(z) + tg(z) \\ &= [(1-t)a_0 + tb_0] + [(1-t)a_1 + tb_1]z + [(1-t)a_2 + tb_2]z^2 + \dots \end{aligned}$$

and the difference

$$g(z) - f(z) = (b_0 - a_0) + (b_1 - a_1)z + (b_2 - a_2)z^2 + \dots$$

are square summable power series since the convexity identity

$$\|(1-t)f(z) + tg(z)\|^2 + t(1-t)\|g(z) - f(z)\|^2 = (1-t)\|f(z)\|^2 + t\|g(z)\|^2$$

holds when  $t$  is in the interval  $[0, 1]$ .

The space of square summable power series is a vector space over the complex numbers which admits a scalar product. The scalar product of square summable power series

$$f(z) = a_0 + a_1z + a_2z^2 + \dots$$

and

$$g(z) = b_0 + b_1z + b_2z^2 + \dots$$

is the complex number

$$\langle f(z), g(z) \rangle = b_0^- a_0 + b_1^- a_1 + b_2^- a_2 + \dots$$

Convergence of the sum is a consequence of the identity

$$4\langle f(z), g(z) \rangle = \|f(z) + g(z)\|^2 - \|f(z) - g(z)\|^2 + i\|f(z) + ig(z)\|^2 - i\|f(z) - ig(z)\|^2.$$

Linearity of a scalar product states that the identity

$$\langle af(z) + bg(z), h(z) \rangle = a\langle f(z), h(z) \rangle + b\langle g(z), h(z) \rangle$$



holds for all complex numbers  $a$  and  $b$  when  $f(z)$ ,  $g(z)$ , and  $h(z)$  are square summable power series. Symmetry of a scalar product states that the identity

$$\langle g(z), f(z) \rangle = \langle f(z), g(z) \rangle^-$$

holds for all square summable power series  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$ . Positivity of a scalar product states that the scalar self-product

$$\langle f(z), f(z) \rangle = \|f(z)\|^2$$

is positive for every nonzero square summable power series  $f(z)$ .

Linearity, symmetry, and positivity of a scalar product imply the Cauchy inequality

$$|\langle f(z), g(z) \rangle| \leq \|f(z)\| \|g(z)\|$$

for all square summable power series  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$ . Equality holds in the Cauchy inequality if, and only if, the power series  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are linearly dependent. The triangle inequality

$$\|h(z) - f(z)\| \leq \|g(z) - f(z)\| + \|h(z) - g(z)\|$$

follows for all square summable power series  $f(z)$ ,  $g(z)$ , and  $h(z)$ . The space of square summable power series is a metric space with

$$\|g(z) - f(z)\| = \|f(z) - g(z)\|$$

as the distance between square summable power series  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$ . The space of square summable power series is a Hilbert space since the metric space is complete. If a Cauchy sequence  $f_0(z), f_1(z), f_2(z), \dots$  of square summable power series

$$f_n(z) = a_{n0} + a_{n1}z + a_{n2}z^2 + \dots$$

is given, the inequality

$$|a_{n0} - a_{m0}|^2 + \dots + |a_{nr} - a_{mr}|^2 \leq \|f_n(z) - f_m(z)\|^2$$

implies that a Cauchy sequence

$$a_{0k}, a_{1k}, a_{2k}, \dots$$

of complex numbers is obtained as coefficients of  $z^k$  for every nonnegative integer  $k$ . Since the complex plane is complete, a power series

$$f(z) = a_0 + a_1z + a_2z^2 + \dots$$

is defined whose coefficients

$$a_k = \lim a_{nk}$$

are limits. The triangle inequality implies that the sequence of distances

$$\|f_n(z) - f_0(z)\|, \|f_n(z) - f_1(z)\|, \|f_n(z) - f_2(z)\|, \dots$$

is Cauchy for every nonnegative integer  $n$ . A limit exists since the real line is complete. Since the inequality

$$|a_{n0} - a_0|^2 + \dots + |a_{nr} - a_r|^2 \leq \lim \|f_n(z) - f_m(z)\|^2$$

holds for every positive integer  $r$ , the power series

$$f_n(z) - f(z)$$

is square summable. Since the inequality

$$\|f_n(z) - f(z)\|^2 \leq \lim \|f_n(z) - f_m(z)\|^2$$

is satisfied, the square summable power series  $f(z)$  is the limit of the Cauchy sequence of square summable power series  $f_n(z)$ .

The distance from an element of a Hilbert space to a nonempty closed convex subset of a Hilbert space is attained by an element of the convex set. If  $f(z)$  is a square summable power series and if  $C$  is a nonempty closed convex set of square summable power series, then an element  $g(z)$  of  $C$  exists which minimizes the distance  $\delta$  from  $f(z)$  to elements of  $C$ . By definition

$$\delta = \inf \|f(z) - g(z)\|$$

is a greatest lower bound taken over the elements  $g(z)$  of  $C$ . It needs to be shown that

$$\delta = \|f(z) - g(z)\|$$

for some element  $g(z)$  of  $C$ . For every positive integer  $n$  an element  $g_n(z)$  of  $C$  exists which satisfies the inequality

$$\|f(z) - g_n(z)\|^2 \leq \delta^2 + n^{-2}.$$

Since

$$(1 - t)g_m(z) + tg_n(z)$$

belongs to  $C$  when  $t$  belongs to the interval  $[0, 1]$ , the inequality

$$\delta \leq \|f(z) - (1 - t)g_m(z) - tg_n(z)\|$$

is then satisfied. The convexity identity

$$\begin{aligned} & \|f(z) - (1 - t)g_m(z) - tg_n(z)\|^2 \\ & + t(1 - t)\|g_m(z) - g_n(z)\|^2 = (1 - t)\|f(z) - g_m(z)\|^2 + t\|f(z) - g_n(z)\|^2 \end{aligned}$$

implies the inequality

$$t(1-t)\|g_m(z) - g_n(z)\|^2 \leq (1-t)m^{-2} + tn^{-2}.$$

Since the square summable power series  $g_n(z)$  form a Cauchy sequence, they converge to a square summable power series  $g(z)$ . Since  $C$  is closed,  $g(z)$  is an element of  $C$  which satisfies the identity

$$\delta = \|f(z) - g(z)\|.$$

A vector subspace of the space of square summable power series is an example of a nonempty convex subset. The orthogonal complement of a vector subspace  $\mathcal{M}$  of the space of square summable power series is the set of square summable power series  $f(z)$  which are orthogonal

$$\langle f(z), g(z) \rangle = 0$$

to every element  $g(z)$  of  $\mathcal{M}$ . The orthogonal complement of a vector subspace of the space of square summable power series is a closed vector subspace of the space of square summable power series. When  $\mathcal{M}$  is a closed vector subspace of the space of square summable power series, and when  $f(z)$  is a square summable power series, an element  $g(z)$  of  $\mathcal{M}$  which is nearest  $f(z)$  is unique and is characterized by the orthogonality of  $f(z) - g(z)$  to elements of  $\mathcal{M}$ . Then  $f(z) - g(z)$  belongs to the orthogonal complement of  $\mathcal{M}$ . Every square summable power series  $f(z)$  is the sum of an element  $g(z)$  of  $\mathcal{M}$ , called the orthogonal projection of  $f(z)$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and an element  $f(z) - g(z)$  of the orthogonal complement of  $\mathcal{M}$ . Orthogonal projection is linear. If  $f_0(z)$  and  $f_1(z)$  are elements of  $\mathcal{M}$  and if  $c_0$  and  $c_1$  are complex numbers, the orthogonal projection of

$$c_0f_0(z) + c_1f_1(z)$$

in  $\mathcal{M}$  is

$$c_0g_0(z) + c_1g_1(z)$$

with  $g_0(z)$  the orthogonal projection of  $f_0(z)$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $g_1(z)$  the orthogonal projection of  $f_1(z)$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ . The closure of a vector subspace  $\mathcal{M}$  of the space of square summable power series is a vector subspace which is the orthogonal complement of the closed vector subspace which is the orthogonal complement of  $\mathcal{M}$ .

A linear functional on the space of square summable power series is a linear transformation of the space into the complex numbers. A linear functional is continuous if, and only if, its kernel is closed. If a continuous linear functional does not annihilate every square summable power series, then its kernel is a proper closed subspace of the space of square summable power series whose orthogonal complement has dimension one. An element  $g(z)$  of the orthogonal complement of the kernel exists such that the linear functional takes  $f(z)$  into the scalar product

$$\langle f(z), g(z) \rangle$$

for every square summable power series  $f(z)$ . If  $g(z)$  is a square summable power series, the linear functional which takes  $f(z)$  into

$$\langle f(z), g(z) \rangle$$

is continuous by the Cauchy inequality.

Multiplication by  $z$  in the space of square summable power series is the transformation which takes

$$f(z) = a_0 + a_1z + a_2z^2 + \dots$$

into

$$zf(z) = 0 + a_0z + a_1z^2 + \dots$$

whenever  $f(z)$ , and hence  $zf(z)$ , is square summable. Multiplication by  $z$  is an isometric transformation

$$\|zf(z)\| = \|f(z)\|$$

of the space of square summable power series into itself. The range of multiplication by  $z$  is the set of square summable power series with constant coefficient zero. The range is a closed vector subspace which is a Hilbert space in the inherited scalar product. The orthogonal complement of the range is the space of constants.

The space of square summable power series with complex coefficients is a fundamental example of a Hilbert space. The constructions made in this space apply in the Hilbert space of square summable power series with coefficients in a Hilbert space. Properties of topology in Hilbert spaces are applied in the generalization.

A Hilbert space is a vector space  $\mathcal{H}$  over the complex numbers which is given a scalar product for which self-products of nonzero elements are positive and which is complete in a resulting metric topology.

Addition is a transformation of the Cartesian product of the space with itself into the space whose properties are familiar from the complex plane. The associative law

$$(\alpha + \beta) + \gamma = \alpha + (\beta + \gamma)$$

holds for all elements  $\alpha, \beta$ , and  $\gamma$  of the space. The commutative law

$$\alpha + \beta = \beta + \alpha$$

holds for all elements  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  of the space. The space contains an origin  $0$  which satisfies the identity

$$0 + \gamma = \gamma = \gamma + 0$$

for every element  $\gamma$  of the space. For every element  $\alpha$  of the space, a unique element

$$\beta = -\alpha$$

of the space exists such that

$$\alpha + \beta = 0 = \beta + \alpha.$$

Multiplication is a transformation of the Cartesian product of the complex plane with the space into the space whose properties are familiar from the complex plane. Multiplication by a complex number  $\gamma$  is a homomorphism of additive structure: The identity

$$\gamma(\alpha + \beta) = \gamma\alpha + \gamma\beta$$

holds for all elements  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  of the space. The parametrization of homomorphisms is consistent with additive structure: The identity

$$(\alpha + \beta)\gamma = \alpha\gamma + \beta\gamma$$

holds for all complex numbers  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  when  $\gamma$  is an element of the space. Multiplication by  $\gamma$  is the homomorphism which annihilates every element of the space when  $\gamma$  is the origin of the complex plane. Multiplication by  $\gamma$  is the identity homomorphism when  $\gamma$  is the unit of the complex plane. The composition of homomorphisms is consistent with multiplicative structure: The associative law

$$(\alpha\beta)\gamma = \alpha(\beta\gamma)$$

holds for all complex numbers  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  when  $\gamma$  is an element of the space.

The scalar product is a transformation of the Cartesian product of the space with itself into the complex numbers whose properties are familiar from the complex plane. The scalar product defines homomorphisms of additive structure: The identities

$$\langle \alpha + \beta, \gamma \rangle = \langle \alpha, \gamma \rangle + \langle \beta, \gamma \rangle$$

and

$$\langle \gamma, \alpha + \beta \rangle = \langle \gamma, \alpha \rangle + \langle \gamma, \beta \rangle$$

hold for all elements  $\alpha, \beta$ , and  $\gamma$  of the space. The scalar product defines a homomorphism and an anti-homomorphism of multiplicative structure for all elements  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  of the space: The identities

$$\langle \gamma\alpha, \beta \rangle = \gamma\langle \alpha, \beta \rangle$$

and

$$\langle \alpha, \gamma\beta \rangle = \gamma^{-1}\langle \alpha, \beta \rangle$$

hold for every complex number  $\gamma$ . The scalar product is symmetric: The identity

$$\langle \beta, \alpha \rangle = \langle \alpha, \beta \rangle^{-1}$$

holds for all elements  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  of the space. The scalar self-product

$$\langle c, c \rangle$$

is positive for every nonzero element  $c$  of the space.

A convex combination

$$(1 - t)\alpha + t\beta$$

of elements  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  of the space is an element of the space defined by a real number  $t$  in the interval  $[0, 1]$ . A subset of the space is said to be convex if it contains all convex combinations of pairs of its elements. The convex span of a subset of the space is the smallest convex set which contains the given set.

The norm of an element  $\gamma$  of the space is the nonnegative solution  $\|\gamma\|$  of the equation

$$\|\gamma\|^2 = \langle \gamma, \gamma \rangle.$$

The Cauchy inequality

$$|\langle \alpha, \beta \rangle| \leq \|\alpha\| \|\beta\|$$

holds for all elements  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  of the space. Equality holds when, and only when,  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are linearly dependent. The triangle inequality

$$\|\gamma - \alpha\| \leq \|\gamma - \beta\| + \|\beta - \alpha\|$$

holds for all elements  $\alpha, \beta$ , and  $\gamma$  of the space. The space is a metric space with

$$\|\beta - \alpha\| = \|\alpha - \beta\|$$

as the distance between elements  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ .

The closure  $B^-$  of a nonempty convex subset  $B$  of the space is defined using the metric topology. The closure of a convex set is a convex set which is its own closure. The closed convex span of a set is the smallest closed convex set which contains the given set.

The metric is not used for the definition of an open set. A nonempty convex set is said to be open if it is disjoint from the closure of every nonempty disjoint convex set. If  $A$  is a nonempty open convex set and if  $B$  is a nonempty convex set, then the intersection of  $A$  with the closure of  $B$  is contained in the closure of the intersection of  $A$  with  $B$ . The intersection of two nonempty open convex sets is an open convex set if it is nonempty.

A subset of the space is said to be open if it is a union of nonempty open convex sets. The empty set is open since it is an empty union. Unions of open sets are open. Finite intersections of open sets are open.

An example of an open set is the complement of the closure of a convex set. A set is said to be closed if its complement is open. Intersections of closed sets are closed. Finite unions of closed sets are closed. The space is a Hausdorff space in the topology whose open and closed sets are defined by convexity. The open and closed sets define the Dedekind topology of the space.

The Dedekind topology is applied in the geometric formulation of the Hahn–Banach theorem: If a nonempty open convex set  $A$  is disjoint from a nonempty convex set  $B$ , then a maximal convex set exists which contains  $B$  and is disjoint from  $A$ . The maximal convex set is closed and has a convex complement.

If  $\beta$  is an element of the space, a continuous linear functional  $\beta^-$  is defined on the space by taking  $\alpha$  into

$$\beta^- \alpha = \langle \alpha, \beta \rangle$$

for every element  $\alpha$  of the space. If  $c$  is a real number, the set of elements  $\alpha$  which satisfy the inequality

$$\mathcal{R} \beta^- \alpha \geq c$$

is a closed convex set whose complement is convex.

Completeness is required of a Hilbert space so that every nonempty closed convex set whose complement is nonempty and convex is determined by an element of the space. A set which is open for the metric topology is open for the Dedekind topology since it is a union of convex sets which are open for the Dedekind topology. The convex set is defined by an element  $\gamma$  of the space and a positive number  $c$  as the set of elements  $\alpha$  which satisfy the inequality

$$(\alpha - \gamma)^-(\alpha - \gamma) < c.$$

When the space is complete in the metric topology, every set which is open for the Dedekind topology is open for the metric topology. The proof applies consequences of completeness in metric spaces observed by Baire.

It needs to be shown that every nonempty convex set which is open for the Dedekind topology is open for the metric topology. The convex set  $A$  can be assumed to contain the origin. Argue by contradiction assuming that the set is not open for the metric topology. Since the set is convex, it has an empty interior for the metric topology.

A convex set  $A_n$  which is open for the Dedekind topology is defined for every positive integer  $n$  as the set of products  $n\alpha$  with  $\alpha$  in  $A$ . The set is convex and has empty interior for the metric topology. A positive number  $c_n$  is chosen for every positive integer  $n$  so that the sum of the numbers converges. An element  $\alpha_n$  of  $A_n$  is chosen inductively so that the inequality

$$(\alpha_{n+1} - \alpha_n)^-(\alpha_{n+1} - \alpha_n) < c_n^2$$

holds for every positive integer  $n$ . The element  $\alpha_1$  of  $A_1$  is chosen arbitrarily. When  $\alpha_n$  is chosen in  $A_n$ , the element  $\alpha_{n+1}$  is chosen in  $A_{n+1}$  so that it does not belong to the closure of  $A_n$ . The element  $\alpha_n$  of the space converge to an element  $\alpha$  of the space since a Hilbert space is assumed metrically complete. Properties of open sets for the Dedekind topology are contradicted since the union of the set  $A_n$  does not contain every element of the space.

Since the Dedekind topology of a Hilbert space is identical with the metric topology, a Hilbert space is complete in the Dedekind topology.

If  $B$  is a nonempty closed convex subset of a Hilbert space and if  $\alpha$  is an element of the space which does not belong to  $B$ , then an element  $\gamma$  of the convex set exists which is closest to  $\alpha$ . The inequality

$$(\alpha - \gamma)^-(\alpha - \gamma) \leq (\alpha - \beta)^-(\alpha - \beta)$$

holds for every element  $\beta$  of  $B$ . The inequality

$$\mathcal{R} (\alpha - \gamma)^-(\beta - \gamma) \geq 0$$

holds for every element  $\beta$  of  $B$ . The set of elements  $\beta$  of the space which satisfy the inequality

$$\mathcal{R} (\alpha - \gamma)^-\beta \geq \mathcal{R} (\alpha - \gamma)^-\gamma$$

is a closed convex set which contains  $B$  and whose complement is convex and contains  $\alpha$ .

A subset  $B$  of a Hilbert space is said to be bounded if the linear functional  $\alpha^-$  maps  $B$  onto a bounded subset of the complex plane for every element  $\alpha$  of the space. If  $B$  is a nonempty closed and bounded convex subset of a Hilbert space, an element  $\gamma$  of  $B$  exists which satisfies the inequality

$$\beta^- \beta \leq \gamma^- \gamma$$

for every element  $\beta$  of  $B$ .

The closed convex span of a bounded subset of a Hilbert space is bounded. If  $B$  is a nonempty bounded subset of a Hilbert space, an element  $\gamma$  of its closed convex span exists which satisfies the inequality

$$\beta^- \beta \leq \gamma^- \gamma$$

for every element  $\beta$  of  $B$ .

A Hilbert space admits a topology which is compatible with addition and multiplication and for which every closed and bounded set is compact. The topology is defined as the weakest topology with respect to which the linear functional  $\alpha^-$  is continuous for every element  $\alpha$  of the space. An open set for the weak topology is a union of open convex sets. A convex set is closed for the weak topology if, and only if, it is closed for the Dedekind topology.

An orthonormal set is a set of elements such that the scalar self-product of every element is one but the scalar product of distinct elements is zero. A Hilbert space admits a maximal orthonormal set as an application of the Kuratowski–Zorn lemma. Two maximal orthonormal sets have the same cardinality. The dimension of the Hilbert space is defined as the cardinality of a maximal orthonormal set.

If  $\mathcal{S}$  is a maximal orthonormal set in a Hilbert space, the space determines a subspace of the Cartesian product of the complex numbers taken over the elements of  $\mathcal{S}$ . An element of the Cartesian product is written as a formal sum

$$\sum f(\iota)\iota$$

over the elements  $\iota$  of the orthonormal set with coefficients which are a complex valued function  $f(\iota)$  of  $\iota$  in the orthonormal set. An element of the Cartesian product determines an element of the Hilbert space if, and only if, the sum

$$\sum |f(\iota)|^2$$

over the elements of the orthonormal set converges. The weak topology of the Hilbert space agrees with the subspace topology of the Cartesian product topology on bounded sets. The compactness of closed and bounded subsets of the Cartesian product space follows from the compactness of closed and bounded subsets of the complex plane since a Cartesian product of compact Hausdorff spaces is a compact Hausdorff space. The weak compactness of closed and bounded convex subsets of a Hilbert space follows because a closed subset of a compact set is compact.



The Hilbert space  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  of square summable power series with coefficients in a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{C}$  is advantageous for the relationship between factorization and invariant subspaces. The construction of the space imitates the construction made when  $\mathcal{C}$  is the complex numbers.

A vector is an element of the coefficient space  $\mathcal{C}$ . The scalar product

$$b^{-}a$$

of vectors  $a$  and  $b$  is taken in the complex plane. The norm  $|c|$  of a vector is the nonnegative solution of the equation

$$|c|^2 = c^{-}c.$$

The space  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  of square summable power series with coefficients in  $\mathcal{C}$  is the set of power series

$$f(z) = a_0 + a_1z + a_2z^2 + \dots$$

with vector coefficients such that the sum

$$\|f(z)\|^2 = |a_0|^2 + |a_1|^2 + |a_2|^2 + \dots$$

converges. If  $w$  is a complex number, the power series

$$wf(z) = wa_0 + wa_1z + wa_2z^2 + \dots$$

with vector coefficients is square summable since the identity

$$\|wf(z)\|^2 = |w|^2\|f(z)\|^2$$

is satisfied. If power series

$$f(z) = a_0 + a_1z + a_2z^2 + \dots$$

and

$$g(z) = b_0 + b_1z + b_2z^2 + \dots$$

with vector coefficients are square summable, then the convex combination

$$\begin{aligned} & (1-t)f(z) + tg(z) \\ &= [(1-t)a_0 + tb_0] + [(1-t)a_1 + tb_1]z + [(1-t)a_2 + tb_2]z^2 + \dots \end{aligned}$$

and the difference

$$g(z) - f(z) = (b_0 - a_0) + (b_1 - a_1)z + (b_2 - a_2)z^2 + \dots$$

are power series with vector coefficients which are square summable since the convexity identity

$$\|(1-t)f(z) + tg(z)\|^2 + t(1-t)\|g(z) - f(z)\|^2 = (1-t)\|f(z)\|^2 + t\|g(z)\|^2$$

holds when  $t$  is in the interval  $[0, 1]$ .

The space of square summable power series with vector coefficients is a vector space over the complex numbers which admits a scalar product. The scalar product

$$\langle f(z), g(z) \rangle = b_0^- a_0 + b_1^- a_1 + b_2^- a_2 + \dots$$

of square summable power series

$$f(z) = a_0 + a_1 z + a_2 z^2 + \dots$$

and

$$g(z) = b_0 + b_1 z + b_1 z^2 + \dots$$

with vector coefficients is a complex number. Convergence of the sum is a consequence of the identity

$$4\langle f(z), g(z) \rangle = \|f(z) + g(z)\|^2 - \|f(z) - g(z)\|^2 + i\|f(z) + ig(z)\|^2 - i\|f(z) - ig(z)\|^2.$$

Linearity

$$\langle af(z) + bg(z), h(z) \rangle = a\langle f(z), h(z) \rangle + b\langle g(z), h(z) \rangle$$

holds for all complex numbers  $a$  and  $b$  when  $f(z)$ ,  $g(z)$ , and  $h(z)$  are square summable power series with vector coefficients. Symmetry

$$\langle g(z), f(z) \rangle = \langle f(z), g(z) \rangle^-$$

holds for all square summable power series  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  with vector coefficients. The scalar self-product

$$\langle f(z), f(z) \rangle$$

of a nonzero square summable power series  $f(z)$  with vector coefficients is positive.

The norm of a square summable power series  $f(z)$  with vector coefficients is the non-negative solution  $\|f(z)\|$  of the equation

$$\|f(z)\|^2 = \langle f(z), f(z) \rangle.$$

The Cauchy inequality

$$|\langle f(z), g(z) \rangle| \leq \|f(z)\| \|g(z)\|$$

holds for all square summable power series  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  with vector coefficients. Equality holds in the Cauchy inequality if, and only if,  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are linearly dependent. The triangle inequality

$$\|h(z) - f(z)\| \leq \|g(z) - f(z)\| + \|h(z) - g(z)\|$$

holds for all square summable power series  $f(z)$ ,  $g(z)$ , and  $h(z)$  with vector coefficients. The space of square summable power series with vector coefficients is a metric space with

$$\|g(z) - f(z)\| = \|f(z) - g(z)\|$$

as the distance between square summable power series  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  with vector coefficients. The space of square summable power series with vector coefficients is a Hilbert space since it is complete in the metric topology.

The multiplicative structure of the complex numbers is lacking in other coefficient spaces. Multiplicative structure is restored by introducing operators on the coefficient space. An operator is a continuous linear transformation of the coefficient space into itself. A complex number is treated as an operator since multiplication by a number is a continuous linear transformation. Since continuity is taken in the Dedekind topology, a continuous transformation is a constant multiple of a contractive transformation. The bound  $|\gamma|$  of an operator  $\gamma$  is the least nonnegative number such that the operator is the product of  $|\gamma|$  and a contractive transformation. When  $\gamma$  is a number, the bound is the absolute value of  $\gamma$ .

If  $W(z)$  is a power series with operator coefficients and if  $f(z)$  is a power series with vector coefficients, the product

$$W(z)f(z)$$

is a power series with vector coefficients. Multiplication by  $W(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  of square summable power series with vector coefficients onto a Hilbert space whose elements are power series with vector coefficients. The partially isometric character of the transformation refers to its isometric character on the orthogonal complement of its kernel. The space obtained is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ , if, and only if, multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. Multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of the space into itself.

If a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{P}$  is contained contractively in a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$ , a unique Hilbert space  $\mathcal{Q}$  exists, which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{H}$ , such that the inequality

$$\|c\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 \leq \|a\|_{\mathcal{P}}^2 + \|b\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2$$

holds whenever

$$c = a + b$$

is the sum of an element  $a$  of  $\mathcal{P}$  and an element  $b$  of  $\mathcal{Q}$ , and such that every element  $c$  of  $\mathcal{H}$  is a sum for which equality holds. The space  $\mathcal{Q}$  is called the complementary space to  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ .

The construction of the space  $\mathcal{Q}$  and the verification of its properties are applications of convexity. The space  $\mathcal{Q}$  is defined as the set of elements  $b$  of  $\mathcal{H}$  for which a finite least upper bound

$$\|b\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 = \sup[\|a + b\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 - \|a\|_{\mathcal{P}}^2]$$

is obtained over all elements  $a$  of  $\mathcal{P}$ . If  $b$  is an element of  $\mathcal{Q}$  and if  $w$  is a complex number, then  $wb$  is an element of  $\mathcal{Q}$  which satisfies the identity

$$\|wb\|_{\mathcal{Q}} = |w|\|b\|_{\mathcal{Q}}.$$

A convex combination

$$(1 - t)a + tb$$

of elements of  $\mathcal{Q}$  is an element of  $\mathcal{Q}$  which satisfies the convexity identity

$$\|(1-t)a + tb\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 + t(1-t)\|b - a\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 = (1-t)\|a\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 + t\|b\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2$$

with  $t$  in the interval  $[0, 1]$ .

The space  $\mathcal{Q}$  is a vector space over the complex numbers. A scalar product is defined in the space by the identity

$$4\langle a, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} = \|a + b\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 - \|a - b\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 + i\|a + ib\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 - i\|a - ib\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2.$$

Immediate consequences of the definition are symmetry

$$\langle b, a \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} = \langle a, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}^{\bar{\phantom{x}}}$$

and the identity

$$\langle \omega a, b \rangle = \omega \langle a, b \rangle$$

when  $\omega$  is a fourth root of unity if  $a$  and  $b$  are elements of  $\mathcal{Q}$ . An application of the convexity identity gives the identity

$$\|(1-t)a + tb\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 - \|(1-t)a - tb\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 = t(1-t)\|a + b\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 - t(1-t)\|a - b\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2$$

which implies the identity

$$\langle (1-t)a, tb \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} = t(1-t)\langle a, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}$$

for all elements  $a$  and  $b$  of  $\mathcal{Q}$  when  $t$  is in the interval  $[0, 1]$ . Another application of the convexity identity gives the identity

$$\begin{aligned} & \|(1-t)(a+c) + t(b+c)\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 - \|(1-t)(a-c) + t(b-c)\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 \\ &= (1-t)\|a+c\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 - (1-t)\|a-c\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 + t\|b+c\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 - t\|b-c\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 \end{aligned}$$

which implies the identity

$$\langle (1-t)a + tb, c \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} = (1-t)\langle a, c \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} + t\langle b, c \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}$$

for all elements  $a, b$ , and  $c$  of  $\mathcal{Q}$  when  $t$  belongs to the interval  $[0, 1]$ . Linearity of a scalar product follows.

Positivity of a scalar product is immediate from the definition. The inequality

$$\|b\|_{\mathcal{H}} \leq \|b\|_{\mathcal{Q}}$$

for elements  $b$  of  $\mathcal{Q}$  states that the space  $\mathcal{Q}$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}$ . The inequality is used to prove that the space  $\mathcal{Q}$  is complete in the metric topology defined by

the scalar product of  $\mathcal{Q}$ . A Cauchy sequence of elements  $b_n$  of  $\mathcal{Q}$  is a Cauchy sequence of elements of  $\mathcal{H}$  since the inequality

$$\|b_m - b_n\|_{\mathcal{H}} \leq \|b_m - b_n\|_{\mathcal{Q}}$$

holds for all nonnegative integers  $m$  and  $n$ . Since  $\mathcal{H}$  is a Hilbert space, an element  $b$  of  $\mathcal{H}$  exists which is the limit of the sequence in the metric topology of  $\mathcal{H}$ . Since the inequality

$$\|b_n\|_{\mathcal{Q}} \leq \|b_m\|_{\mathcal{Q}} + \|b_m - b_n\|_{\mathcal{Q}}$$

holds for all nonnegative integers  $m$  and  $n$ , the numbers  $\|b_n\|_{\mathcal{Q}}$  form a Cauchy sequence. A nonnegative number exists which is the limit of the sequence. If  $a$  is an element of  $\mathcal{P}$ , the element  $a + b$  of  $\mathcal{H}$  is the limit of the elements  $a + b_n$  in the metric topology of  $\mathcal{H}$ . Since the inequality

$$\|a + b_n\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 \leq \|a\|_{\mathcal{P}}^2 + \|b_n\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2$$

holds for every nonnegative integer  $n$ , the inequality

$$\|a + b\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 \leq \|a\|_{\mathcal{P}}^2 + \lim \|b_n\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2$$

is satisfied. Since the inequality

$$\|b\|_{\mathcal{Q}} \leq \lim \|b_n\|_{\mathcal{Q}}$$

follows,  $b$  belongs to  $\mathcal{Q}$ . Since the inequality

$$\|b - b_m\|_{\mathcal{Q}} \leq \lim \|b_n - b_m\|_{\mathcal{Q}}$$

holds for every nonnegative integer  $m$ ,  $b$  is the limit of the elements  $b_n$  in the metric topology of  $\mathcal{Q}$ .

The inequality

$$\|c\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 \leq \|a\|_{\mathcal{P}}^2 + \|b\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2$$

holds by the definition of  $\mathcal{Q}$  whenever

$$c = a + b$$

is the sum of an element  $a$  of  $\mathcal{P}$  and an element  $b$  of  $\mathcal{Q}$ . It will be shown that every element  $c$  of  $\mathcal{H}$  is the sum of an element  $a$  of  $\mathcal{P}$  and an element  $b$  of  $\mathcal{Q}$  for which equality holds. When  $c$  is given, a continuous linear functional on  $\mathcal{P}$  is defined by taking  $u$  into

$$\langle u, c \rangle_{\mathcal{H}}$$

since the inclusion of  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$  is continuous.

The element  $a$  of  $\mathcal{P}$  which satisfies the identity

$$\langle u, c \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} = \langle u, a \rangle_{\mathcal{P}}$$

is obtained from  $c$  under the adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ . It will be shown that the element

$$b = c - a$$

of  $\mathcal{H}$  belongs to  $\mathcal{Q}$ . Since the identity

$$\|u + b\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 = \|c\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 + \langle a, u - a \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} + \langle u - a, a \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} + \|u - a\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2$$

holds for every element  $u$  of  $\mathcal{P}$  and since the inequality

$$\|u - a\|_{\mathcal{H}} \leq \|u - a\|_{\mathcal{P}}$$

is satisfied, the inequality

$$\|u + b\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 \leq \|c\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 - \|a\|_{\mathcal{P}}^2 + \|u\|_{\mathcal{P}}^2$$

holds for every element  $u$  of  $\mathcal{P}$ . Since the inequality

$$\|b\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 \leq \|c\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 - \|a\|_{\mathcal{P}}^2$$

holds by the definition of  $\mathcal{Q}$ ,  $b$  is an element of  $\mathcal{Q}$ . Equality holds since the reverse inequality holds by the definition of  $\mathcal{Q}$ .

The intersection of  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{Q}$  is a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}$  with scalar product

$$\langle a, b \rangle_{\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}} = \langle a, b \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} + \langle a, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}.$$

The inclusions of  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}$  and in  $\mathcal{P}$  and in  $\mathcal{Q}$  are continuous. If an element

$$c = a + b$$

of  $\mathcal{H}$  is the sum of an element  $a$  of  $\mathcal{P}$  and an element  $b$  of  $\mathcal{Q}$  such that equality holds in the inequality

$$\|c\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 \leq \|a\|_{\mathcal{P}}^2 + \|b\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2,$$

then the inequality

$$\|a\|_{\mathcal{P}}^2 + \|b\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 \leq \|a + u\|_{\mathcal{P}}^2 + \|b - u\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2$$

holds for every element  $u$  of the intersection of  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{Q}$ . Since  $u$  can be replaced by  $wu$  for every complex number  $w$ , the identity

$$\langle a, u \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} = \langle b, u \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}$$

holds for every element  $u$  of  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}$ . The identity implies uniqueness of the elements  $a$  and  $b$  in the minimal decomposition of an element  $c$  of  $\mathcal{H}$ . The element  $a$  of  $\mathcal{P}$  is obtained from  $c$  under the adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ . The element  $b$  of  $\mathcal{Q}$  is obtained from  $c$  under the adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ . The identity

$$\langle c, c' \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} = \langle a, a' \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} + \langle b, b' \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}$$

holds whenever an element

$$c' = a' + b'$$

of  $\mathcal{H}$  is the sum of an element  $a'$  of  $\mathcal{P}$  and an element  $b'$  of  $\mathcal{Q}$ .

Uniqueness of the complementary space  $\mathcal{Q}$  to  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$  is a consequence of properties of minimal decompositions. The adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$  is the same for every complementary space. The elements of a complementary space  $\mathcal{Q}$  obtained from the adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$  are dense in  $\mathcal{Q}$  and have scalar self-products in  $\mathcal{Q}$  which are independent of the choice of complementary space  $\mathcal{Q}$ . These properties imply uniqueness of the complementary space to  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ . The space  $\mathcal{P}$  is the complementary space to  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ . The Hilbert space

$$\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{P} \vee \mathcal{Q}$$

is said to be the complementary sum of  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{Q}$ . The complementary sum is an orthogonal sum if, and only if, the intersection space  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}$  of  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{Q}$  contains no nonzero element.

Complementation is preserved under surjective partially isometric transformations. If Hilbert spaces  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{Q}$  are contained contractively as complementary subspaces of a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{P} \vee \mathcal{Q}$  and if  $T$  is a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{P} \vee \mathcal{Q}$  onto a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$ , then  $T$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{P}$  onto a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{P}'$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{H}$ ,  $T$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{Q}$  onto a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{Q}'$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{H}$ , and the space  $\mathcal{P}'$  and  $\mathcal{Q}'$  are complementary subspaces of

$$\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{P}' \vee \mathcal{Q}'.$$

The extension space  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is the Hilbert space of square summable Laurent series with vector coefficients. The space  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is contained isometrically in  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$ . An isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto its orthonormal complement in  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  is defined by taking  $f(z)$  into  $z^{-1}f(z^{-1})$ .

Multiplication by  $z$  and division by  $z$  are isometric transformations of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. If a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{M}$  is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ , multiplication by  $z$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{M}$  into itself if, and only if, division by  $z$  is a contractive transformation of the complementary space to  $\mathcal{M}$  in  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

A Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$  whose elements are power series with vector coefficients is said to satisfy the inequality for difference quotients if  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  belongs to the space whenever  $f(z)$  belongs to the space and if the inequality

$$\|[f(z) - f(0)]/z\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 \leq \|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 - |f(0)|^2$$

is satisfied. A Hilbert space whose elements are power series with vector coefficients is said to satisfy the identity for difference quotients if it satisfies the inequality for difference quotients and if equality always holds.

A Hilbert space of power series with vector coefficients which satisfies the inequality for difference quotients is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The extension space of a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$  which satisfies the inequality for difference quotients is the Hilbert space  $\text{ext } \mathcal{H}$

which is contained contractively in  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  such that the complementary space to  $\text{ext } \mathcal{H}$  in  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  is isometrically equal to the complementary space to  $\mathcal{H}$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . Division by  $z$  is a contractive transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{H}$  into itself.

A Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  satisfies the inequality for difference quotients if, and only if, multiplication by  $z$  is a contractive transformation of the complementary space to  $\mathcal{H}$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

A theorem which is due to Beurling [1] when the coefficient space is the complex numbers applies to spaces which satisfy the inequality for difference quotients and are contained isometrically in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . An isometric inclusion in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is unnecessary for the conclusion of the theorem as is the restriction on the coefficient space. A weaker hypothesis is sufficient.

**Theorem 1.** *A Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$  of power series with vector coefficients which satisfies the inequality for difference quotients is isometrically equal to the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  for a power series  $W(z)$  with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself if multiplication by  $z$  is an isometric transformation of the complementary space to  $\mathcal{H}$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.*

*Proof of Theorem 1.* The complementary space in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  to a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$  which satisfies the inequality for difference quotients is a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{M}$  such that multiplication by  $z$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{M}$  into itself. If multiplication by  $z$  is an isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{M}$  into itself, the orthogonal complement of the range of multiplication by  $z$  is a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{B}$  which is contained isometrically in  $\mathcal{M}$  and which is mapped isometrically onto orthogonal subspaces of  $\mathcal{M}$  under multiplication by  $z^m$  and multiplication by  $z^n$  for unequal nonnegative integers  $m$  and  $n$ . The closed span of these subspaces of  $\mathcal{M}$  is the full space.

A power series  $W(z)$  with operator coefficients acts as a partially isometric multiplication of  $\mathcal{C}$  onto  $\mathcal{B}$  if, and only if, it acts as a partially isometric multiplication of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto  $\mathcal{M}$ . If an element of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  belongs to the kernel of multiplication by  $W(z)$ , then all coefficients of the element belong to the kernel of multiplication by  $W(z)$ .

Such a power series exists if, and only if, the dimension of  $\mathcal{B}$  is less than or equal to the dimension of  $\mathcal{C}$ . The dimension inequality is satisfied when  $\mathcal{C}$  has infinite dimension since the dimension of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is equal to the dimension of  $\mathcal{C}$  and since the dimension of  $\mathcal{B}$  is less than or equal to the dimension of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . It remains to verify the dimension inequality when  $\mathcal{C}$  has finite dimension  $r$ .

Argue by contradiction assuming that  $\mathcal{B}$  contains an orthonormal set of  $r + 1$  elements

$$f_0(z), \dots, f_r(z).$$

If  $c_0, \dots, c_r$  are corresponding vectors, then the square matrix which has entry

$$c_i^- f_j(z)$$

in the  $i$ -th row and  $j$ -column has vanishing determinant. Expanding the determinant along the  $i$ -th row produces the vanishing power series

$$c_i^- f_0(z)g_0(z) + \dots + c_i^- f_r(z)g_r(z)$$



with

$$(-1)^k g_k(z)$$

the determinant of the matrix obtained by deleting the  $i$ -th row and  $k$ -th column of the starting matrix. Since  $c_i$  is arbitrary and since each power series  $g_k(z)$  with complex coefficients is square summable, the element

$$f_0(z)g_0(z) + \dots + f_r(z)g_r(z)$$

of  $\mathcal{M}$  vanishes identically. The power series

$$g_0(z), \dots, g_r(z)$$

vanish since the elements

$$z^n f_k(z)$$

of  $\mathcal{M}$  form an orthonormal set. An inductive argument shows that the determinants of all square submatrices of the starting matrix vanish. A contradiction is obtained since the starting matrix does not vanish identically for all vectors  $c_0, \dots, c_r$ .

This completes the proof of the theorem.

The power series constructed in Theorem 1 has a remarkable property since the kernel of multiplication by  $W(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself contains  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  whenever it contains  $f(z)$ . A weaker conclusion is obtained when the power series is constructed under a hypothesis which appears in applications to invariant subspaces.

**Theorem 2.** *A Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$  of power series with vector coefficients which satisfies the identity for difference quotients is isometrically equal to a space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  for a power series  $W(z)$  with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.*

*Proof of Theorem 2.* As in the proof of Theorem 1 the coefficient space can be assumed of dimension  $r$  for some positive integer  $r$ . The space  $\mathcal{H}$  is contained isometrically in the augmented space  $\mathcal{H}'$  since  $\mathcal{H}$  satisfies the identity for difference quotients. The orthogonal complement of  $\mathcal{H}$  in  $\mathcal{H}'$  is a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{B}$  which is contained contractively in the complementary space  $\mathcal{M}$  to  $\mathcal{H}$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . Multiplication by  $z$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{M}$  into itself which acts as an isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{M}$  onto the complementary space to  $\mathcal{B}$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ . The Hilbert space  $\mathcal{B}(z)$  of square summable power series is defined with coefficients in  $\mathcal{B}$ . A partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{B}(z)$  onto  $\mathcal{M}$  is defined by taking a power series

$$\sum b_n z^n$$

with coefficients in  $\mathcal{B}$  into the element

$$\sum b_n(z) z^n$$

of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ .

Since the space  $\mathcal{H}$  satisfies the identity for difference quotients, division by  $z$  is an isometric transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{H}$  into itself. Multiplication by  $z^n$  is for every positive integer  $n$  an isometric transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{H}$  onto a Hilbert space which is the orthogonal sum of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{H}$  and the isometric image of the space of polynomial elements of  $\mathcal{B}(z)$  of degree less than  $n$ .

It is sufficient to show that the space  $\mathcal{B}$  has dimension at most  $r$ . Argue by contradiction assuming that  $\mathcal{B}$  contains an orthonormal set

$$f_0(z), \dots, f_r(z)$$

of  $r + 1$  elements. If  $c_0, \dots, c_r$  are corresponding vectors, then the square matrix which has entry

$$c_i^- f_j(z)$$

in the  $i$ -th row and  $j$ -th column has vanishing determinant. Expanding the determinant along the  $i$ -th row and  $j$ -th column produces the vanishing power series

$$c_i^- f_0(z)g_0(z) + \dots + c_i^- f_r(z)g_r(z)$$

with

$$(-1)^k g_k(z)$$

the determinant of the matrix obtained by deleting the  $i$ -th row and  $k$ -th column. Since the  $c_i$  are arbitrary and since each power series  $g_k(z)$  with complex coefficients is square summable, the element

$$f_0 g_0(z) + \dots + f_r g_r(z)$$

of  $\mathcal{B}(z)$  vanishes. An inductive argument shows that the determinants of all square submatrices of the starting matrix vanish. A contradiction is obtained since the starting matrix does not vanish identically for all vectors  $c_0, \dots, c_r$ .

This completes the proof of the theorem.

Linear systems are a mechanism for the construction of invariant subspaces of transformations by factorization of analytic functions called transfer functions of linear systems. For transformations which take a Hilbert space contractively into itself, the state space and external spaces of the linear system are Hilbert spaces.

The linear system is a square matrix whose four entries are continuous linear transformations. The matrix acts on a Hilbert space which is the Cartesian product of the state space and the external space. The elements of the Cartesian product are realized as column vectors with upper entry in the state space and lower entry in the external space.

The upper left entry of the matrix is the main transformation, which takes the state space into itself. The upper right entry is the input transformation, which takes the external space into the state space. The lower left entry is the output transformation, which takes the state space into the external space. The lower right entry is the external operator, which takes the external space into itself.

The matrix of the linear system is assumed to have an isometric adjoint. A canonical model of the linear system is constructed in a Hilbert space of power series with vector coefficients for a coefficient space which is isometrically equal to the external space.

When the linear system has matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \end{pmatrix}$$

with isometric adjoint, a power series

$$\sum a_n z^n$$

with vector coefficients is defined by

$$a_n = CA^n f$$

for every element  $f$  of the state space. The set of elements of the state space for which the power series vanishes is a closed invariant subspace for the main transformation in which its restriction has an isometric adjoint. Invariant subspaces of transformations with isometric adjoint are constructed without the use of the factorization. The subspace is assumed to contain no nonzero element for the construction of the canonical model.

A canonical linear system whose matrix has isometric adjoint is assumed to have as state space a Hilbert space whose elements are power series with vector coefficients. The power series

$$f(z) = \sum a_n z^n$$

associated with an element of the space is assumed to be constructed by iteration of the main transformation and the action of the output transformation. The external operator then takes a power series  $f(z)$  into its constant coefficient  $f(0)$ . The main transformation takes  $f(z)$  into

$$[f(z) - f(0)]/z.$$

The state space  $\mathcal{H}$  of the linear system is a Hilbert space of power series with vector coefficients whose structure is determined by the isometric property of the adjoint matrix. The augmented space  $\mathcal{H}'$  is the Hilbert space of power series  $f(z)$  with vector coefficients such that  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  belongs to  $\mathcal{H}$  with scalar product determined by the identity

$$\|[f(z) - f(0)]/z\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 = \|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}'}^2 - |f(0)|^2.$$

The coefficient space  $\mathcal{C}$  is contained isometrically in the augmented space  $\mathcal{H}'$ . Multiplication by  $z$  is an isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}$  onto the orthogonal complement of  $\mathcal{C}$  in  $\mathcal{H}'$ .

The matrix of the linear system is realized as a transformation of the augmented space  $\mathcal{H}'$  into itself. The matrix takes an element  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{H}'$  with constant coefficient zero into

$$f(z)/z.$$

The matrix takes an element  $c$  of the coefficient space into

$$W(z)c$$

for a power series  $W(z)$  with operator coefficients which defines the transfer function of the linear system. The matrix takes an element  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{H}'$  into

$$[f(z) - f(0)]/z + W(z)f(0).$$

Since the matrix has an isometric adjoint, it is a partially isometric transformation of the augmented Hilbert space onto itself. If  $f(z)$  is an element of  $\mathcal{H}$  and if  $c$  is a vector, then

$$g(z) = f(z) + W(z)c$$

is an element of  $\mathcal{H}'$ . The inequality

$$\|g(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}'}^2 \leq \|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 + |c|^2$$

is satisfied. Every element  $g(z)$  of  $\mathcal{H}'$  admits a representation for which equality hold. The space  $\mathcal{H}$  satisfies the inequality for difference quotients.

The space  $\mathcal{H}$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}'$ . Multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}$  onto the complementary space to  $\mathcal{H}$  in  $\mathcal{H}'$ . Multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. Multiplication by  $W(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto a Hilbert space which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The space  $\mathcal{H}$  is isometrically equal to the complementary space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  of the range of multiplication by  $W(z)$  as it acts on  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ .

If  $W(z)$  is a power series with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, then multiplication by  $W(z)$  has a unique continuous extension as a contractive transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself which commutes with multiplication by  $z$ . The conjugate power series

$$W^*(z) = W_0^- + W_1^- z + W_2^- z^2 + \dots$$

is defined with operator coefficients which are adjoints of the operator coefficients of the power series

$$W(z) = W_0 + W_1 z + W_2 z^2 + \dots$$

Multiplication by  $W^*(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself which has a contractive extension as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. Multiplication by  $W^*(z^{-1})$  is the contractive transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself which takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$  whenever multiplication by  $W^*(z)$  takes  $f(z^{-1})$  into  $g(z^{-1})$ . The adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is multiplication by  $W^*(z^{-1})$ . The adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself takes an element  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into the power series which has the same coefficient of  $z^n$  as

$$W^*(z^{-1})f(z)$$

for every nonnegative integer  $n$ .

A construction of invariant subspaces is due to David Hilbert for contractive transformations of a Hilbert space into itself whose adjoint is isometric. A canonical model of such transformations appears in an expository treatment of the construction by Gustav Herglotz [9].

A Herglotz space is a Hilbert space of power series with vector coefficients such that a contractive transformation of the space into itself with isometric adjoint is defined by taking  $f(z)$  into  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  and such that a continuous transformation of the space into the coefficient space is defined by taking a power series  $f(z)$  into its constant coefficient  $f(0)$ .

A transformation  $T$  with domain and range in a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$  is said to be accretive if

$$\langle Tf, f \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} + \langle f, Tf \rangle_{\mathcal{H}}$$

is nonnegative for every element  $f$  of the domain of  $T$ . The transformation is said to be maximal accretive if every element of the Hilbert space is a sum

$$f + Tf$$

with  $f$  in the domain of  $T$ .

If  $\phi(z)$  is a power series with operator coefficients such that a maximal accretive transformation in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is defined by taking  $f(z)$  into

$$\phi(z)f(z)$$

whenever  $f(z)$  and  $\phi(z)f(z)$  belong to  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ , then a power series

$$W(z) = [1 - \phi(z)]/[1 + \phi(z)]$$

with operator coefficients is defined such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. The Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  is a Hilbert space of power series with vector coefficients such that an isometric transformation of the space onto the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  is defined by taking  $f(z)$  into

$$[1 + W(z)]f(z).$$

A contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  into itself which has an isometric adjoint is defined by taking  $f(z)$  into  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$ . A continuous transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  into the coefficient space is defined by taking a power series  $f(z)$  into its constant coefficient  $f(0)$ . The space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  is a Herglotz space. A Herglotz space is isometrically equal to a space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  for some Herglotz function  $\phi(z)$ . The Herglotz spaces associated with two Herglotz functions are isometrically equal if, and only if, the Herglotz functions differ by a constant which is a skew-conjugate operator.

The extension space  $\mathcal{E}(\phi)$  of a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  is a Hilbert space whose elements are Laurent series with vector coefficient such that multiplication by  $z$  is an isometric transformation of the space onto itself and such that a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{E}(\phi)$  onto  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  is defined by taking a Laurent series into the power series which has the same coefficient of  $z^n$  for every nonnegative integer  $n$ .

The Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  is isometrically equal to  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  when  $\phi(z)$  is the constant one. The extension space of the space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  is then isometrically equal to  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$ . A Hilbert space whose elements are Laurent series is isometrically equal to the extension space of a Herglotz space if multiplication by  $z$  is an isometric transformation of the space onto itself and if a continuous transformation of the space into the coefficient space is defined by taking a Laurent series into its constant coefficient.

A convex structure applies to the Hilbert spaces which are contained contractively in a given Hilbert space. If Hilbert spaces  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{Q}$  are contained contractively in the given Hilbert space, and if  $t$  is in the interval  $[0, 1]$ , a unique Hilbert space

$$\mathcal{H} = (1 - t)\mathcal{P} + t\mathcal{Q}$$

exists, which is contained contractively in the given Hilbert space, such that the convex combination

$$c = (1 - t)a + tb$$

belongs to  $\mathcal{H}$  whenever  $a$  belongs to  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $b$  belongs to  $\mathcal{Q}$ , such that the inequality

$$\|c\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 \leq (1 - t)\|a\|_{\mathcal{P}}^2 + t\|b\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2$$

is satisfied, and such that every element  $c$  of  $\mathcal{H}$  is a convex combination for which equality holds.

If  $\mathcal{E}(\phi)$  and  $\mathcal{E}(\psi)$  are extension spaces of Herglotz spaces  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  and  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$ , then a Herglotz space

$$\mathcal{L}(\phi + \psi) = \mathcal{L}(\phi) \vee \mathcal{L}(\psi)$$

exists in which the Herglotz spaces  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  and  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  are contained contractively as complementary spaces. The extension spaces  $\mathcal{E}(\phi)$  and  $\mathcal{E}(\psi)$  are contained contractively as complementary space in the extension space

$$\mathcal{E}(\phi + \psi) = \mathcal{E}(\phi) \vee \mathcal{E}(\psi).$$

A Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  exists such that the extension space

$$\mathcal{E}(\theta) = \mathcal{E}(\phi) \wedge \mathcal{E}(\psi)$$

is the intersection spaces of the extension spaces  $\mathcal{E}(\phi)$  and  $\mathcal{E}(\psi)$ .

A Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi - \theta)$  exists such that the extension space  $\mathcal{E}(\phi - \theta)$  is the complementary space in the extension space  $\mathcal{E}(\phi)$  of the extension space  $\mathcal{E}(\theta)$ . A Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi - \theta)$  exists such that the extension space  $\mathcal{E}(\psi - \theta)$  is the complementary space

in the extension space  $\mathcal{E}(\psi)$  of the extension space  $\mathcal{E}(\theta)$ . A Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi + \theta)$  exists such that the extension space  $\mathcal{E}(\phi + \theta)$  is the complementary space in the extension space  $\mathcal{E}(\phi + \psi)$  of the extension space  $\mathcal{E}(\psi - \theta)$ . A Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi + \theta)$  exists such that the extension space  $\mathcal{E}(\psi + \phi)$  is the complementary space in the extension space  $\mathcal{E}(\phi + \psi)$  of the extension space  $\mathcal{E}(\phi - \theta)$ . The extension space

$$\mathcal{E}(\phi) = (1 - t)\mathcal{E}(\phi + \theta) + t\mathcal{E}(\psi - \theta)$$

is a convex combination of the extension spaces  $\mathcal{E}(\phi + \theta)$  and  $\mathcal{E}(\phi - \theta)$  with  $t$  and  $1 - t$  equal. The extension space

$$\mathcal{E}(\psi) = (1 - t)\mathcal{E}(\psi + \theta) + t\mathcal{E}(\psi - \theta)$$

is a convex combination of the extension spaces  $\mathcal{E}(\psi + \theta)$  and  $\mathcal{E}(\psi - \theta)$  with  $t$  and  $1 - t$  equal.

The Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  is contained contractively in the Herglotz spaces  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  and  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$ . The Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi - \theta)$  is the complementary space in the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  of the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$ . The Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi - \theta)$  is the complementary space in the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  of the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$ . The Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi + \theta)$  is the complementary space in the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi + \psi)$  of the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi - \theta)$ . The Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi + \theta)$  is the complementary space in the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi + \psi)$  of the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi - \theta)$ . The Herglotz space

$$\mathcal{L}(\phi) = (1 - t)\mathcal{L}(\phi + \theta) + t\mathcal{L}(\phi - \theta)$$

is a convex combination of the Herglotz spaces  $\mathcal{L}(\phi + \theta)$  and  $\mathcal{L}(\phi - \theta)$  with  $t$  and  $1 - t$  equal. The Herglotz space

$$\mathcal{L}(\psi) = (1 - t)\mathcal{L}(\psi + \theta) + t\mathcal{L}(\psi - \theta)$$

is a convex combination of the Herglotz spaces  $\mathcal{L}(\psi + \theta)$  and  $\mathcal{L}(\psi - \theta)$  with  $t$  and  $1 - t$  equal.

An extreme point of a convex set is an element of the set which is not a convex combination

$$(1 - t)a + tb$$

of distinct elements of the set with  $t$  and  $1 - t$  positive. An element of the convex set of Herglotz spaces which are contained contractively in a given Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is an extreme point if, and only if, it is a Herglotz space whose extension space is contained isometrically in the extension space  $\mathcal{E}(\psi)$ .

A convex combination of Hilbert spaces of power series with vector coefficients which satisfy the inequality for difference quotients is a Hilbert space of power series with vector coefficients which satisfies the inequality for difference quotients. A Hilbert space of power series with vector coefficients is said to satisfy the identity for difference quotients if it satisfies the inequality for difference quotients and if equality always holds.

A Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$  of power series with vector coefficients which satisfies the identity for difference quotients is an extreme point of the convex set of Hilbert spaces of power series with vector coefficients which satisfy the inequality for difference quotients. If

$$\mathcal{H} = (1 - t)\mathcal{P} + t\mathcal{Q}$$

is a convex combination with  $t$  and  $1 - t$  positive of Hilbert space  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{Q}$  of power series with vector coefficients which satisfy the inequality for difference quotients, then every element

$$h(z) = (1 - t)f(z) + tg(z)$$

of  $\mathcal{H}$  is a convex combination of elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $g(z)$  of  $\mathcal{Q}$  such that equality holds in the inequality

$$\|h(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 \leq (1 - t)\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{P}}^2 + t\|g(z)\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2.$$

Since the inequality

$$\|[h(z) - h(0)]/z\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 \leq (1 - t)\|[f(z) - f(0)]/z\|_{\mathcal{P}}^2 + t\|[g(z) - g(0)]/z\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2$$

holds with

$$\|[f(z) - f(0)]/z\|_{\mathcal{P}}^2 \leq \|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{P}}^2 - |f(0)|^2$$

and

$$\|[g(z) - g(0)]/z\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 \leq \|g(z)\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 - |g(0)|^2,$$

the inequality

$$\|[h(z) - h(0)]/z\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 \leq \|h(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 - (1 - t)|f(0)|^2 - t|g(0)|^2$$

is satisfied. The inequality reads

$$\|[h(z) - h(0)]/z\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 \leq \|h(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 - |h(0)|^2 - t(1 - t)|g(0) - f(0)|^2$$

since the convexity identity

$$|(1 - t)f(0) + tg(0)|^2 + t(1 - t)|g(0) - f(0)|^2 = (1 - t)|f(0)|^2 + t|g(0)|^2$$

is satisfied. Since the space  $\mathcal{H}$  satisfies the identity for difference quotients, the constant coefficients in  $f(z)$ ,  $g(z)$ , and  $h(z)$  are equal. An inductive argument shows that the  $n$ -th coefficients of  $f(z)$ ,  $g(z)$ , and  $h(z)$  are equal for every nonnegative integer  $n$ . Since  $f(z)$ ,  $g(z)$ , and  $h(z)$  are always equal, the spaces  $\mathcal{P}$ ,  $\mathcal{Q}$ , and  $\mathcal{H}$  are isometrically equal.

If a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$  of power series with vector coefficients satisfies the inequality for difference quotients, the augmented space is the Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}'$  of power series  $f(z)$  with vector coefficients such that  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  belongs to  $\mathcal{H}$  with scalar product determined by the identity

$$\|[f(z) - f(0)]/z\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 = \|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}'}^2 - |f(0)|^2.$$



The space  $\mathcal{H}$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}'$ . The complementary space  $\mathcal{B}$  to  $\mathcal{H}$  in  $\mathcal{H}'$  is a Hilbert space which is contained contractively in the complementary space  $\mathcal{M}$  to  $\mathcal{H}$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . Multiplication by  $z$  is an isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{M}$  onto the complementary space to  $\mathcal{B}$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

If  $W(z)$  is a power series with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, then multiplication by  $W(z)$  admits a unique continuous extension as a contractive transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself which commutes with multiplication by  $z$ .

The conjugate power series

$$W^*(z) = W_0^- + W_1^- z + W_2^- z^2 + \dots$$

is defined with operator coefficients which are adjoints of the operator coefficients of

$$W(z) = W_0 + W_1 z + W_2 z^2 + \dots$$

Multiplication by  $W^*(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. The adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$  when multiplication by  $W^*(z)$  takes  $z^{-1}f(z^{-1})$  into  $z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$ . The adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself takes an element  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into the element  $g(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  which has the same coefficient of  $z^n$  for every nonnegative integer  $n$  as the element of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  obtained from  $f(z)$  under the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

If  $U(z)$  and  $V(z)$  are power series with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $U(z)$  and multiplication by  $V(z)$  are contractive transformations of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, then multiplication by

$$W(z) = U(z)V(z)$$

is a continuous transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. The space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ . Multiplication by  $U(z)$  is a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$  onto the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ .

A factorization is derived from a contractive inclusion.

**Theorem 3.** *If  $U(z)$  and  $W(z)$  are power series with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $U(z)$  and multiplication by  $W(z)$  are contractive transformations of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself and if the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ , then*

$$W(z) = U(z)V(z)$$

*for a power series  $V(z)$  with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $V(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself and such that the range of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is orthogonal to the kernel of multiplication by  $U(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.*

*Proof of Theorem 3.* A Hilbert space  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$ , which is contained isometrically in  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$ , is defined for every nonnegative integer  $r$  as the set of elements  $f(z)$  such that  $z^r f(z)$  belongs to  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . Multiplication by  $U(z)$  and multiplication by  $W(z)$  are contractive transformations of  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$  into itself. The adjoint transformations of  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$  into itself are compositions of the adjoints of multiplication by  $U(z)$  and of multiplication by  $W(z)$  as transformations of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself with the orthogonal projection of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  onto  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$ .

A space  $\mathcal{H}(U_r)$  is defined with

$$U_r(z) = z^r U(z).$$

The set of elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$  such that  $z^r f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(U_r)$  is a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}_r(U)$  which is mapped isometrically onto the space  $\mathcal{H}(U_r)$  on multiplication by  $z^r$ . The space  $\mathcal{H}_r(U)$  is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$ . Multiplication  $U(z)$  is a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$  onto the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{H}_r(U)$  in  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$ . If  $h(z)$  is an element of  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$ , a unique element  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  exists such that

$$h(z) - U(z)f(z)$$

belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}_r(U)$  and such that equality holds in the inequality

$$\|h(z)\|^2 \leq \|h(z) - U(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}_r(U)}^2 + \|f(z)\|^2.$$

The element  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$  is obtained from  $h(z)$  under the adjoint of multiplication by  $U(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

A space  $\mathcal{H}(W_r)$  is defined with

$$W_r(z) = z^r W(z).$$

The set of elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$  such that  $z^r f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(W_r)$  is a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}_r(W)$  which is mapped isometrically onto the space  $\mathcal{H}(W_r)$  on multiplication by  $z^r$ . The space  $\mathcal{H}_r(W)$  is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$ . Multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$  onto the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{H}_r(W)$  in  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$ . If  $h(z)$  is an element of  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$ , a unique element  $g(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$  exists such that

$$h(z) - W(z)g(z)$$

belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}_r(W)$  and such that equality holds in the inequality

$$\|h(z)\|^2 \leq \|h(z) - W(z)g(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}_r(W)}^2 + \|g(z)\|^2.$$

The element  $g(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$  is obtained from  $h(z)$  under the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$  into itself.

The space  $\mathcal{H}_r(U)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}_r(W)$  since the space  $\mathcal{H}(U_r)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W_r)$ . Since the element

$$h(z) - U(z)f(z)$$

of the space  $\mathcal{H}_r(U)$  is obtained from  $h(z)$  under the adjoint of the inclusion of the space in  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$  and since the element

$$h(z) - W(z)g(z)$$

of the space  $\mathcal{H}_r(W)$  is obtained from  $h(z)$  under the adjoint of the inclusion of the space in  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$ , the element

$$h(z) - U(z)f(z)$$

of the space  $\mathcal{H}_r(U)$  is obtained from the element

$$h(z) - W(z)g(z)$$

of the space  $\mathcal{H}_r(W)$  under the adjoint of the inclusion of the space  $\mathcal{H}_r(U)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}_r(W)$ . The inequality

$$\|g(z)\| \leq \|f(z)\|$$

follows from the inequality

$$\|h(z) - U(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}_r(U)} \leq \|h(z) - W(z)g(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}_r(W)}.$$

If the adjoint of multiplication by  $U(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself takes  $h(z)$  into  $f(z)$  and if the coefficient of  $z^n$  in  $h(z)$  vanishes when  $n$  is less than  $-r$ , then the coefficient of  $z^n$  in  $f(z)$  vanishes when  $n$  is less than  $-r$ . If the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself takes  $h(z)$  into  $g(z)$  and if the coefficient of  $z^n$  in  $h(z)$  vanishes when  $n$  is less than  $-r$ , then the coefficient of  $z^n$  in  $g(z)$  vanishes when  $n$  is less than  $-r$ .

If  $h(z)$  is an element of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ , a unique element  $h_r(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$  exists such that the coefficient of  $z^n$  in

$$h(z) - h_r(z)$$

vanishes when  $n$  is not less than  $-r$ . If the adjoint of multiplication by  $U(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself takes  $h(z)$  into  $f(z)$ , an element  $f_r(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$  exists such that the coefficient of  $z^n$  in

$$f(z) - f_r(z)$$

vanishes when  $n$  is not less than  $-r$ . If the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself takes  $h(z)$  into  $g(z)$ , an element  $g_r(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$  exists such that the coefficient of  $z^n$  in

$$g(z) - g_r(z)$$

vanishes when  $n$  is not less than  $-r$ . The element

$$h_r(z) - U(z)f_r(z)$$

of  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}_r(U)$  and equality holds in the inequality

$$\|h_r(z)\|^2 \leq \|h_r(z) - U(z)f_r(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}_r(U)}^2 + \|f_r(z)\|^2.$$

The element

$$h_r(z) - W(z)g_r(z)$$

of  $\mathcal{C}_r(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}_r(W)$  and equality holds in the inequality

$$\|h_r(z)\|^2 \leq \|h_r(z) - W(z)g_r(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}_r(W)}^2 + \|g_r(z)\|^2.$$

The inequality

$$\|g(z)\| \leq \|f(z)\|$$

holds since the inequality

$$\|g_r(z)\| \leq \|f_r(z)\|$$

holds for every nonnegative integer  $r$ .

The transformation which takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$  admits a unique continuous extension as a contractive transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself which annihilates the kernel of multiplication by  $U(z)$ . The transformation commutes with multiplication by  $z$  and takes elements of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  whose coefficient of  $z^n$  vanishes when  $n$  is not less than  $-r$  into elements of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  whose coefficient of  $z^n$  vanishes when  $n$  is not less than  $-r$ .

A unique power series  $V(z)$  with operator coefficients exists such that multiplication by  $V(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself and such that the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$  for every element  $f(z)$  of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$ . The identity

$$W(z) = U(z)V(z)$$

is satisfied since

$$W^*(z) = V^*(z)U^*(z).$$

This completes the proof of the theorem.

If  $W(z)$  is a power series with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, then multiplication by  $W(z)$  is an isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself when, and only when,

$$W^*(z)W(z^{-1}) = 1.$$

Multiplication by  $W^*(z)$  is an isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself when, and only when,

$$W(z^{-1})W^*(z) = 1.$$

If  $W(z)$  is a power series with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  and multiplication by  $W^*(z)$  are isometric transformations of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, then an isometric transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  onto itself is defined by taking  $f(z)$  into

$$W(z)z^{-1}f(z^{-1}).$$

The inverse transformation takes  $f(z)$  into

$$W^*(z)z^{-1}f(z^{-1}).$$

An isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$  is defined by taking  $f(z)$  into

$$W^*(z)z^{-1}f(z^{-1}).$$

The inverse transformation takes  $f(z)$  into

$$W(z)z^{-1}f(z^{-1}).$$

The adjoint of the transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  into itself which takes  $f(z)$  into  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  is unitarily equivalent to the transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$  into itself which takes  $f(z)$  into  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$ . The adjoint of the transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$  into itself which takes  $f(z)$  into  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  is unitarily equivalent to the transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  into itself which takes  $f(z)$  into  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$ .

When  $W(z)$  is a power series with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, the isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$  is replaced by a relation whose graph is a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  of pairs  $(f(z), g(z))$  of elements  $f(z)$  of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  and  $g(z)$  of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$ .

**Theorem 4.** *If  $W(z)$  is a power series with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, then a unique Hilbert space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  exists whose elements are pairs  $(f(z), g(z))$  of power series  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  with vector coefficients such that*

$$([f(z) - f(0)]/z, zg(z) - W^*(z)f(0))$$

and

$$(zf(z) - W(z)g(0), [g(z) - g(0)]/z)$$

belong to the space whenever  $(f(z), g(z))$  belongs to the space and such that the identities

$$\|([f(z) - f(0)]/z, zg(z) - W^*(z)f(0))\|_{\mathcal{D}(W)}^2 = \|(f(z), g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(W)}^2 - |f(0)|^2$$

and

$$\|(zf(z) - W(z)g(0), [g(z) - g(0)]/z)\|_{\mathcal{D}(W)}^2 = \|(f(z), g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(W)}^2 - |g(0)|^2$$

are satisfied. A partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  is defined by taking  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $f(z)$ . A partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$  is defined by taking  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $g(z)$ . An isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{D}(W^*)$  is defined by taking  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(g(z), g(z))$ .

*Proof of Theorem 4.* The construction of the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  applies properties of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W_r)$  defined by

$$W_r(z) = z^r W(z)$$

for every nonnegative integer  $r$ . Multiplication by  $z^r$  is an isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{H}(W_r)$ . The orthogonal complement of the image of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W_r)$  is contained isometrically in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  and consists of the elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  which are polynomials of degree less than  $r$ . The space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W_r)$ . Multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a partially isometric transformation of the Hilbert space of polynomial elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  of degree less than  $r$  onto the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W_r)$ .

A Hilbert space  $\mathcal{D}_r(W)$  is defined as the set of pairs  $(f(z), g(z))$  of elements  $f(z)$  of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  and polynomial elements

$$g(z) = a_0 + a_1 z + \dots + a_{r-1} z^{r-1}$$

of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  of degree less than  $r$  such that the element

$$z^r f(z) - W(z)(a_0 z^{r-1} + \dots + a_{r-1})$$

of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W_r)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ . The scalar product in the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  is determined by the identity

$$\begin{aligned} & \|z^r f(z) - W(z)(a_0 z^{r-1} + \dots + a_{r-1})\|_{\mathcal{H}(W)}^2 \\ &= \|(f(z), g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}_r(W)}^2 - |a_0|^2 - \dots - |a_{r-1}|^2. \end{aligned}$$

If  $f(z)$  is an element of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ , a unique polynomial element  $g(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  of degree less than  $r$  exists such that

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(W)} = \|(f(z), g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}_r(W)}.$$

A partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}_{r+1}(W)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{D}_r(W)$  is defined by taking  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(f(z), h(z))$  with  $h(z)$  the polynomial of degree less than  $r$  whose coefficient of  $z^n$  is equal to the coefficient of  $z^n$  in  $g(z)$  when  $n$  is less than  $r$ .

The pair

$$(zf(z) - W(z)g(0), [g(z) - g(0)]/z)$$

belongs to the space  $\mathcal{D}_r(W)$  whenever  $(f(z), g(z))$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{D}_{r+1}(W)$  and the identity

$$\begin{aligned} & \|(zf(z) - W(z)g(0), [g(z) - g(0)]/z)\|_{\mathcal{D}_r(W)}^2 \\ &= \|(f(z), g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}_{r+1}(W)}^2 - |g(0)|^2 \end{aligned}$$

is satisfied.

The adjoint of the transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  into  $\mathcal{C}$  which takes

$$f(z) = \sum a_n z^n$$

into

$$a_r$$

for a nonnegative integer  $r$  is the transformation which takes a vector  $c$  into the element

$$z^r c - W(z)(W_0^- z^r + \dots + W_r^-)c$$

of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ .

The adjoint of the transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}_{r+1}(W)$  into  $\mathcal{C}$  which takes  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $f(0)$  is the transformation which takes a vector  $c$  into the element

$$([1 - W(z)W(0)^-]c, (W_1^- + W_2^- z + \dots + W_r^- z^r)c)$$

of the space  $\mathcal{D}_{r+1}(W)$ .

The space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  is defined as the set of pairs  $(f(z), g(z))$  of elements  $f(z)$  of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  and power series  $g(z)$  with vector coefficients such that an element  $(f(z), g_r(z))$  of the space  $\mathcal{D}_r(W)$  is defined for every nonnegative integer  $r$  with  $g_r(z)$  the polynomial of degree less than  $r$  whose coefficient of  $z^n$  is equal to the coefficient of  $z^n$  in  $g(z)$  when  $n$  is less than  $r$ , and such that the sequence of numbers

$$\|(f(z), g_r(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}_r(W)}^2$$

is bounded. A limit exists since the sequence is nondecreasing. The scalar product of the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  is determined by the requirement that the limit is equal to

$$\|(f(z), g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(W)}^2.$$

A contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  into itself is defined by taking  $(f(z), g(z))$  into

$$(zf(z) - W(z)g(0), [g(z) - g(0)]/z).$$

The identity

$$\|(zf(z) - W(z)g(0), [g(z) - g(0)]/z)\|_{\mathcal{D}(W)}^2 = \|(f(z), g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(W)}^2 - |g(0)|^2.$$

The adjoint of the transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  into  $\mathcal{C}$  which takes  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $f(0)$  is the transformation which takes a vector  $c$  into the element

$$([1 - W(z)W(0)^-]c, [W^*(z) - W(0)^-]c/z)$$

of the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$ .

The adjoint of the transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  into itself which takes  $(f(z), g(z))$  into

$$(zf(z) - W(z)g(0), [g(z) - g(0)]/z)$$

is the transformation which takes  $(f(z), g(z))$  into

$$([f(z) - f(0)]/z, zg(z) - W^*(z)f(0)).$$

The identity

$$\|([f(z) - f(0)]/z, zg(z) - W^*(z)f(0))\|_{\mathcal{D}(W)}^2 = \|(f(z), g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(W)}^2 - |f(0)|^2$$

is satisfied.

Assume that a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{D}$  whose elements are pairs  $(f(z), g(z))$  of power series  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  with vector coefficients has the required properties: The pairs

$$([f(z) - f(0)]/z, zg(z) - W^*(z)f(0))$$

and

$$[zf(z) - W(z)g(0), [g(z) - g(0)]/z]$$

belong to the space whenever  $(f(z), g(z))$  belongs to the space and the identities

$$\|([f(z) - f(0)]/z, zg(z) - W^*(z)f(0))\|_{\mathcal{D}}^2 = \|(f(z), g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}}^2 - |f(0)|^2$$

and

$$\|[zf(z) - W(z)g(0), [g(z) - g(0)]/z]\|_{\mathcal{D}}^2 = \|(f(z), g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}}^2 - |g(0)|^2$$

are satisfied.

A partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{D}$  onto a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$  of power series with vector coefficients which satisfies the inequality for difference quotients is defined by taking  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $f(z)$ . The space  $\mathcal{H}$  is isometrically equal to the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  since it is the state space of a canonical linear system which is conjugate isometric and has transfer function  $W(z)$ . An inductive argument constructs a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}$  onto the space  $\mathcal{D}_r(W)$  for every nonnegative integer  $r$ . The transformation takes  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(f(z), g_r(z))$  with  $g_r(z)$  the polynomial of degree less than  $r$  whose coefficient of  $z^n$  is equal to the coefficient of  $z^n$  in  $g(z)$  when  $n$  is less than  $r$ . The space  $\mathcal{D}$  is isometrically equal to the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  by the construction of the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$ .

The isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{D}(W^*)$  which takes  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(g(z), f(z))$  is a consequence of the characterization of the spaces.

This completes the proof of the theorem.

The relationship between spaces  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  and  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$  is well behaved in factorization. Assume that  $U(z)$  and  $V(z)$  are power series with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $U(z)$  and multiplication by  $V(z)$  are contractive transformations of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. Then

$$W(z) = U(z)V(z)$$

is a power series with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. A partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(U)$



onto a Hilbert space which is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  is defined by taking  $(f(z), g(z))$  into

$$(f(z), V^*(z)g(z)).$$

A partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$  onto a Hilbert space which is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  is defined by taking  $(f(z), g(z))$  into

$$(U(z)f(z), g(z)).$$

The image of the space  $\mathcal{D}(U)$  and the image of the space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$  are complementary subspaces of the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$ .

A Herglotz space is associated with a power series  $W(z)$  with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. Since the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself takes  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  into  $[g(z) - g(0)]/z$  whenever it takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$ , the adjoint acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto ext  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$ . The complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$ . The complementary space to ext  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  in ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is ext  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$ .

An element  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  belongs to the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  if, and only if,  $W(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\phi)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|W(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(W)}^2$$

is satisfied. An element

$$f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$$

of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  belongs to ext  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  if, and only if,  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that

$$(W(z)f(z), -g(z))$$

belongs to the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\phi)}^2 = \|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|^2 + \|(W(z)f(z), -g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(W)}^2$$

is satisfied.

An element  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  if, and only if, the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself takes  $f(z)$  into an element  $h(z)$  of the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(W)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|h(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\phi)}^2$$

is satisfied.

If  $U(z), V(z)$ , and

$$W(z) = U(z)V(z)$$

are power series with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $U(z)$ ,  $V(z)$ , and  $W(z)$  are contractive transformations of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself and if the adjoint of multiplication by  $U(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$ , the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$ , and the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$ , then the space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  and the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  onto the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$ . The space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$ . The adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  onto the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$ .

A canonical factorization of a power series  $W(z)$  with operator coefficients applies when multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself but the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  does not satisfy the identity for difference quotients.

**Theorem 5.** *If multiplication by a power series  $W(z)$  with operator coefficients is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, then*

$$W(z) = U(z)V(z)$$

for power series  $U(z)$  and  $V(z)$  with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $U(z)$  and multiplication by  $V(z)$  are contractive transformations of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  and satisfies the identity for difference quotients, such that multiplication by  $U(z)$  is a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$  onto the orthogonal complement of the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  whose kernel contains  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  whenever it contains  $f(z)$ , and such that the orthogonal complement of the kernel in the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$  is the closure of the set of products  $V(z)f(z)$  with  $f(z)$  a polynomial element of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$ .

*Proof of Theorem 5.* The adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  whose elements are the elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $W(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\psi)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|W(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(W)}^2$$

is satisfied.

A Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta)$  is defined which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  and whose complementary space in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \eta)$  which is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  and is the closure of the polynomial elements of the space. The space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is the closure of its polynomial elements and is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta)$ . A Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  is defined which is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta)$  and is the closure of the polynomial elements of the space. The space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$ .

The orthogonal complement of the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta - \theta)$  which contains no nonzero polynomial. The space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \eta)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$ . Since the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta - \theta)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta)$  and is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta - \psi)$  which is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta)$ , the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta - \theta)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta - \psi)$ . The orthogonal complement of the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta - \theta)$  in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta - \psi)$  is the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta - \psi)$ .

Since the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \eta)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$ , the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta - \psi)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$ . The space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta - \theta)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  since it is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta - \psi)$ . Since the orthogonal complement of the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta - \theta)$  in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  is the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \eta)$  which is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$ , the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$ .

Since the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  and is the closure of its polynomial elements, a power series  $V(z)$  with operator coefficients exists such that multiplication by  $V(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$ , and such that the kernel of the transformation contains  $zf(z)$  whenever it contains  $f(z)$ . The complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  whose elements are the elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $V(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\theta)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|V(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(V)}^2.$$

The kernel of the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$  and is the orthogonal complement of the image of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$ . A partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  exists which takes  $V(z)f(z)$  into  $W(z)f(z)$  for every element  $f(z)$  of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  and whose kernel is the kernel of the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

An element

$$f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$$

of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  belongs to  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  if, and only if,  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $(W(z)f(z), -g(z))$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\psi)}^2 = \|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|^2 + \|(W(z)f(z), -g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(W)}^2$$

is satisfied.

An element

$$f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$$

of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  belongs to  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  if, and only if,  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $(V(z)f(z), -g(z))$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\theta)}^2 = \|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|^2 + \|(V(z)f(z), -g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(V)}^2$$

is satisfied. An isometric transformation of the kernel of the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself into the space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$  is defined by taking  $f(z)$  into  $(f(z), 0)$ . The image of the kernel is the orthogonal complement in the space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$  of the image of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$ .

Since the space  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$ , a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$  into the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  exists which takes  $(V(z)f(z), -g(z))$  into  $(W(z)f(z), -g(z))$  whenever  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that

$$f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$$

belongs to the space  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  and whose kernel is the set of elements  $(f(z), 0)$  with  $f(z)$  in the kernel of the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

The space  $\mathcal{H}(V^*)$  is continued isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$ . A power series  $U(z)$  with operator coefficients exists by Theorem 3 such that multiplication by  $U(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that

$$W(z) = U(z)V(z),$$

and such that the range of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is orthogonal to the kernel of multiplication by  $U(z)$  as a transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

Since the kernel of multiplication by  $V^*(z)$  as a transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is orthogonal to the range of multiplication by  $U^*(z)$  as a transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, the kernel of the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is orthogonal to the range of multiplication by  $U^*(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself and is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{H}(U^*)$ . Multiplication by  $U(z)$  annihilates the kernel of the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. The space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  since multiplication by  $U(z)$  is a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ .

The adjoint of multiplication by  $U(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  whose elements are the elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $U(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\phi)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|U(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(U)}^2$$

is satisfied.

The adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  onto the orthogonal complement of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$ . The kernel of the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is contained isometrically in the space

$\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$ . Since the orthogonal complement of the kernel is mapped isometrically onto the orthogonal complement of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$ , since the transformation takes  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  into  $[g(z) - g(0)]/z$  whenever it takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$ , and since the orthogonal complement of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  contains no nonzero polynomial, the polynomial elements of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  belong to the kernel of the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. Since the kernel is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$ , the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  satisfies the identity for difference quotients.

This completes the proof of the theorem.

An application of commutant lifting [6] is made to the structure of a contractive transformation of a space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  into a space  $\mathcal{H}(B)$  which takes  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  into  $[g(z) - g(0)]/z$  whenever it takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$ .

**Theorem 6.** *If a contractive transformation  $T$  of a space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  which satisfies the identity for difference quotients into a space  $\mathcal{H}(B)$  takes  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  into  $[g(z) - g(0)]/z$  whenever it takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$  for power series  $A(z)$  and  $B(z)$  with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $A(z)$  and multiplication by  $B(z)$  are contractive transformations of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, then a contractive transformation  $T'$  of the augmented space  $\mathcal{H}(A')$ ,*

$$A'(z) = zA(z)$$

*into the augmented space  $\mathcal{H}(B')$ ,*

$$B'(z) = zB(z),$$

*exists which extends  $T$  and takes  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  into  $[g(z) - g(0)]/z$  whenever it takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$ .*

*Proof of Theorem 6.* The construction of  $T'$  is an application of complementation. The coefficient space  $\mathcal{C}$  is contained isometrically in the spaces  $\mathcal{H}(A')$  and  $\mathcal{H}(B')$ . Multiplication by  $z$  is an isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  onto the orthogonal complement of  $\mathcal{C}$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(A')$  and of the space  $\mathcal{H}(B)$  onto the orthogonal complement of  $\mathcal{C}$  in  $\mathcal{H}(B')$ . The space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{H}(A')$  since the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  satisfies the identity for difference quotients. The space  $\mathcal{H}(B)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(B')$ .

Since  $T'$  is defined to agree with  $T$  on the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$ , it remains to define  $T'$  on the orthogonal complement of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(A')$ . The action of  $T'$  is determined within a constant since the transformation is required to take  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  into  $[g(z) - g(0)]/z$  whenever it takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$ . A contractive transformation  $S$  is defined of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A')$  onto the orthogonal complement of  $\mathcal{C}$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(B')$ . The transformation  $S$  is defined on the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  to take  $f(z)$  into  $g(z) - g(0)$  when  $T$  takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$ . The transformation  $S$  is defined on the orthogonal complement of  $\mathcal{C}$  to take  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$  with  $g(0)$  equal to zero when  $T$  takes  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  into  $[g(z) - g(0)]/z$ . The

definition of  $S$  on  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  is consistent with the definition of  $S$  on the orthogonal complement of  $\mathcal{C}$  since  $T$  takes  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  into  $[g(z) - g(0)]/z$  whenever it takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$ .

The transformation  $S$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  onto a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{P}$  which is contained contractively in the orthogonal complement of  $\mathcal{C}$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(B')$ . The transformation acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A')$  onto a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{M}$  which is contained contractively in the orthogonal complement of  $\mathcal{C}$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(B')$ . The space  $\mathcal{P}$  is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{M}$ . The transformation acts as a partially isometric transformation of the orthogonal complement of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(A')$  onto the complementary space  $\mathcal{Q}$  to  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

A Hilbert space  $\mathcal{M}'$  is defined as the set of elements  $f(z)$  of the space  $\mathcal{H}(B')$  such that  $f(z) - f(0)$  belongs to  $\mathcal{M}$  with scalar product determined by the identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{M}'}^2 = \|f(z) - f(0)\|_{\mathcal{M}}^2 + |f(0)|^2.$$

Since  $T$  acts as partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  onto a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{P}'$  which is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(B')$  and since  $S$  takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z) - g(0)$  whenever  $T$  takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$ , a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{P}'$  onto  $\mathcal{P}$  is defined by taking  $g(z)$  into  $g(z) - g(0)$ . The space  $\mathcal{P}'$  is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{M}'$ . The complementary space  $\mathcal{Q}'$  to  $\mathcal{P}'$  in  $\mathcal{M}'$  is a Hilbert space which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{M}'$ . A partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{Q}'$  into  $\mathcal{Q}$  is defined by taking  $g(z)$  into  $g(z) - g(0)$ . The transformation  $T'$  is defined on the orthogonal complement of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(A')$  to take  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$  when  $g(z)$  is the element of  $\mathcal{Q}'$  of least norm such that  $S$  takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z) - g(0)$ .

This completes the proof of the theorem.

If  $A(z)$  and  $B(z)$  are power series with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $A(z)$  and multiplication by  $B(z)$  are contractive transformations of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself and if

$$A(z)C(z) = D(z)B(z)$$

for power series  $C(z)$  and  $D(z)$  with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $C(z)$  and multiplication by  $D(z)$  are contractive transformations of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, then the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(DB)$  and a contractive transformation  $T$  of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(B)$  which takes  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  into  $[g(z) - g(0)]/z$  whenever it takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$  is defined by taking  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$  when

$$f(z) - D(z)g(z)$$

belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(D)$  and equality holds in the inequality

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(DB)}^2 \leq \|f(z) - D(z)g(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(D)}^2 + \|g(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(B)}^2.$$

Every contractive transformation  $T$  of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(B)$  which takes  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  into  $[g(z) - g(0)]/z$  whenever it takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$  is obtained when the

space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  satisfies the identity for difference quotients. The construction of the power series  $D(z)$  is an application of commutant lifting.

Spaces  $\mathcal{H}(A_r)$  and  $\mathcal{H}(B_r)$  are defined by

$$A_r(z) = z^r A(z)$$

and

$$B_r(z) = z^r B(z)$$

for every nonnegative integer  $r$ . The spaces  $\mathcal{H}(A_r)$  satisfy the identity for difference quotients since the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  satisfies the identity for difference quotients. A contractive transformation  $T_r$  of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A_r)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(B_r)$  which takes  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  into  $[g(z) - g(0)]/z$  whenever it takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$  is defined inductively for nonnegative integers  $r$ . The transformation  $T_0$  of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A_0)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(B_0)$  is the transformation  $T$  of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(B)$ . When  $T_r$  is defined with the required properties, the transformation  $T_{r+1}$  is defined with the required properties by Theorem 5 so as to extend the transformation  $T_r$ .

A transformation of the union of the spaces  $\mathcal{H}(A_r)$  into the union of the spaces  $\mathcal{H}(B_r)$  is defined which agrees with  $T_r$  on the space  $\mathcal{H}(A_r)$  for every nonnegative integer  $r$ . The space of polynomial elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  of degree less than  $r$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{H}(A_r)$  and in the space  $\mathcal{H}(B_r)$  for every nonnegative integer  $r$ . The transformation  $T_r$  of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A_r)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(B_r)$  takes polynomials of degree less than  $r$  into polynomials of degree less than  $r$  since it takes  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  into  $[g(z) - g(0)]/z$  whenever it takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$ . Since the polynomial elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  are dense in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ , the transformation has a unique continuous extension as a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself which takes  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  into  $[g(z) - g(0)]/z$  whenever it takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$ . The transformation is the adjoint of multiplication by  $D(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself for a power series  $D(z)$  with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $D(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

The transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(B)$  determines a factorization by the choice of  $D(z)$ . The identity for difference quotients is not required for the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$ .

**Theorem 7.** *If  $A(z), B(z)$ , and  $D(z)$  are power series with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $A(z)$ , multiplication by  $B(z)$ , and multiplication by  $D(z)$  are contractive transformations of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself and if the adjoint of multiplication by  $D(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(B)$ , then a power series  $C(z)$  with operator coefficients exists such that multiplication by  $C(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that*

$$A(z)C(z) = D(z)B(z),$$

*and such that the range of multiplication by  $C(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is orthogonal to the kernel of multiplication by  $A(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.*

*Proof of Theorem 7.* Since the adjoint of multiplication by  $D(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(B)$ , the adjoint of multiplication by  $D(z)$  as a transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\text{ext } \mathcal{H}(A)$  into the space  $\text{ext } \mathcal{H}(B)$ . Multiplication by  $D(z)$  acts as a contractive transformation of the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{H}(B)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . Since multiplication by  $D(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{H}(B)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{H}(DB)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ , the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{H}(DB)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is contained contractively in the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(DB)$ .

A power series  $C(z)$  with operator coefficients exists by Theorem 3 such that multiplication by  $C(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that

$$A(z)C(z) = D(z)B(z),$$

and such that the range of multiplication by  $C(z)$  as a transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is orthogonal to the kernel of multiplication by  $A(z)$  as a transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

This completes the proof of the theorem.

A power series  $W(z)$  with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself admits by Theorem 5 a canonical factorization

$$W(z) = U(z)V(z)$$

into power series  $U(z)$  and  $V(z)$  with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $U(z)$  and multiplication by  $V(z)$  are contractive transformations of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself: The space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  and satisfies the identity for difference quotients. The set of elements of the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$  which are products  $V(z)f(z)$  for a polynomial element of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is dense in the orthogonal complement of the set of elements of the space which belong to the kernel of multiplication by  $U(z)$ .

The factorization is compatible with contractive transformations of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  into itself which take  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  into  $[g(z) - g(0)]/z$  whenever they take  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$ .

**Theorem 8.** *If multiplication by a power series  $W(z)$  with operator coefficients is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself and if in the canonical factorization*

$$W(z) = U(z)V(z)$$

*the adjoint of multiplication by  $P(z)$  acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  into itself, then the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  into itself.*

*Proof of Theorem 8.* The adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$



which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  whose elements are the elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $W(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\psi)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|W(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(W)}^2$$

is satisfied.

A power series  $Q(z)$  with operator coefficients exists by Theorem 7 such that multiplication by  $Q(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that

$$W(z)Q(z) = P(z)W(z),$$

and such that the range of multiplication by  $Q(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is orthogonal to the kernel of multiplication by  $W(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

An element  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  if, and only if, the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  takes  $f(z)$  into an element  $g(z)$  of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(W)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|g(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\psi)}^2$$

is satisfied. The adjoint of multiplication by  $Q(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  into itself.

The adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  whose elements are the elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $V(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\theta)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|V(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(V)}^2$$

is satisfied.

The space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$ . The closure of the polynomial elements of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \eta)$  which is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$ . Since the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \eta)$  is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ , the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \eta)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta)$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta)$  and is the closure of the polynomial elements of the space.

The adjoint of multiplication by  $Q(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  into itself since

$$Q^*(z)W^*(z) = W^*(z)P^*(z).$$

The transformation takes polynomial elements of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  into polynomial elements of the space since it takes  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  into  $[g(z) - g(0)]/z$  whenever it takes

$f(z)$  into  $g(z)$ . Since the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \eta)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  and is the closure of the polynomial elements of the space, the transformation acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \eta)$  into itself.

The adjoint of multiplication by  $Q(z)$  as a transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a contractive transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \eta)$  into itself which takes  $zf(z)$  into  $zg(z)$  whenever it takes  $f(z)$  into  $g(z)$ . Since multiplication by  $z$  is an isometric transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \eta)$  onto itself, multiplication by  $Q(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \eta)$  into itself. The adjoint of multiplication by  $Q(z)$  as a transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a contractive transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\eta)$  into itself since  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\eta)$  is the complementary space to  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \eta)$  in  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$ . The adjoint of multiplication by  $Q(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta)$  into itself.

Since the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta)$  and is the closure of the polynomial elements of the space, the adjoint of multiplication by  $Q(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  into itself and of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  into itself. Since the adjoint of multiplication by  $Q(z)$  acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  into itself, it acts as a contractive transformation of the orthogonal complement  $\mathcal{L}(\theta - \psi)$  of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  into itself.

The adjoint of multiplication by  $U(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  whose elements are the elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $U(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\phi)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|U(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(U)}^2$$

is satisfied. An element  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  if, and only if, the adjoint of multiplication by  $U(z)$  takes  $f(z)$  into an element  $g(z)$  of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(U)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|g(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\phi)}^2$$

is satisfied.

The adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta - \psi)$  whose kernel is the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. The adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta - \psi)$  since

$$W^*(z) = V^*(z)U^*(z).$$

The kernel of the transformation is the kernel of the adjoint of multiplication by  $U(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

An element  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  if, and only if, the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  takes  $f(z)$  into an element  $g(z)$  of the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta - \psi)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(U)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|g(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(\theta-\psi)}^2$$

is satisfied. The adjoint of multiplication by  $P(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  into itself since the adjoint of multiplication by  $Q(z)$  as a transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta - \psi)$  into itself and since

$$W^*(z)P^*(z) = Q^*(z)W^*(z).$$

This completes the proof of the theorem.

Since the adjoint of multiplication by  $P(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  into itself a power series  $S(z)$  with operator coefficients exists by Theorem 7 such that multiplication by  $S(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that

$$U(z)S(z) = P(z)U(z),$$

and such that the range of multiplication by  $S(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is orthogonal to the kernel of multiplication by  $U(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. The adjoint of multiplication by  $S(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$  into itself since

$$V(z)Q(z) = S(z)V(z).$$

A variant of the canonical decomposition has similar invariance properties. Assume that a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  and is the closure of its polynomial elements. A power series  $W(z)$  with operator coefficients exists such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$ , and such that the kernel of the transformation contains  $zf(z)$  whenever it contains  $f(z)$ .

The complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  whose elements are the elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $W(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\psi)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|W(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(W)}^2$$

is satisfied. An element

$$f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$$

is ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  belongs to ext  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  if, and only if,  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $(W(z)f(z), -g(z))$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\psi)}^2 = \|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|^2 + \|(W(z)f(z), -g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(W)}^2$$

is satisfied. The orthogonal complement in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  of the image of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  is the set of elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  whose coefficients are annihilated by the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$ . The orthogonal complement in the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  of the image of

ext  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  is the set of pairs  $(f(z), g(z))$  of elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $g(z)$  vanishes and the coefficients of  $f(z)$  are annihilated by the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$ .

A Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  is defined which is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  such that ext  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  is the set of elements

$$h(z) = f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$$

of ext  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  with scalar product determined by the identity

$$\|h(z)\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\theta)}^2 = \|h(z)\|^2 + \|h(z)\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\psi)}^2.$$

The space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  is the complementary space in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  of a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  since ext  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is contained contractively in ext  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$ .

The space ext  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is dense in the space ext  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$ : If a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{P}$  is contained contractively in a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$  and if a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{Q}$  is defined as the set of elements  $c$  of  $\mathcal{P}$  with scalar product determined by the identity

$$\|c\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 = \|c\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 + \|c\|_{\mathcal{P}}^2,$$

then the complementary space to  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$  is dense in the complementary space to  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ . The proof is given by reduction to the case in which  $\mathcal{H}$  is one-dimensional.

The space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is dense in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  since ext  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is dense in ext  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$ . The space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  is the closure of its polynomial elements since the space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is the closure of its polynomial elements. A power series  $V(z)$  with operator coefficients exists such that multiplication by  $V(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$ , and such that the kernel of the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  contains  $zf(z)$  whenever it contains  $f(z)$ .

The complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  whose elements are the elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $V(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\theta)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|V(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(V)}^2$$

is satisfied. An element

$$f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$$

of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  belongs to ext  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  if, and only if,  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $(V(z)f(z), -g(z))$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\theta)}^2 = \|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|^2 + \|(V(z)f(z), -g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(V)}^2$$

is satisfied. The orthogonal complement in the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$  of the image of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  is the set of elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  whose coefficients are annihilated by the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$ . The orthogonal complement in the space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$  of the image of

ext  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  is the set of pairs  $(f(z), g(z))$  of elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $g(z)$  vanishes and the coefficients of  $f(z)$  are annihilated by the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$ .

A contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$  into the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  is defined which takes  $(V(z)f(z), -g(z))$  into  $(W(z)f(z), -g(z))$  whenever  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that

$$f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$$

belongs to ext  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  and which annihilates elements of the space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$  which are orthogonal to the image of ext  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$ .

The space  $\mathcal{H}(V^*)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$ . A power series  $U(z)$  with operator coefficients exists by Theorem 3 such that multiplication by  $U(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that

$$W(z) = U(z)V(z),$$

and such that the range of multiplication by  $U^*(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is orthogonal to the kernel of multiplication by  $V^*(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

A contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(U)$  into the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  which take  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(f(z), V(z)g(z))$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(U)$  onto a Hilbert space which is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$ . The contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$  into the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  which takes  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(V(z)f(z), g(z))$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$  onto the complementary space to the image of the space  $\mathcal{D}(U)$  in the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$ .

If a dense set of elements of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  are products  $W(z)f(z)$  with  $f(z)$  a polynomial element of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$ , a partially isometric transformation of ext  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  onto the image of the space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$  in the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  is defined by taking

$$f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$$

for elements  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into

$$(W(z)f(z), -g(z)).$$

The space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ . A partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  onto the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  is defined by taking  $f(z)$  into  $W(z)f(z)$ . If  $P(z)$  is a power series with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $P(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself and such that the adjoint of multiplication by  $P(z)$  acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  into itself, then the adjoint of multiplication by  $P(z)$  acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  into itself.

A convex decomposition is made of a Hilbert space of power series with vector coefficients which satisfies the inequality for difference quotients but which does not satisfy the identity for difference quotients when the space is suitably confined.

A space  $\mathcal{H}$  of power series with vector coefficients which satisfies the inequality for difference quotients is assumed to be contained contractively in a space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  for a power series  $W(z)$  with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself and such that the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  satisfies the inequality for difference quotients.

The coefficient space can be assumed without loss of generality to have infinite dimension. A power series  $U(z)$  with operator coefficients exists by the proof of Theorem 1 such that multiplication by  $U(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself and such that the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  is isometrically equal to the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$ . A power series  $V(z)$  with operator coefficients exists by Theorem 3 such that multiplication by  $V(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that

$$W(z) = U(z)V(z),$$

and such that the range of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is orthogonal to the kernel of multiplication by  $U(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

The adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  whose elements are the elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $W(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\psi)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|W(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(W)}^2$$

is satisfied. Multiplication by  $W(z)$  annihilates polynomial elements of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$ .

The adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  whose elements are the elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $V(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\theta)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|V(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(V)}^2$$

is satisfied. Multiplication by  $V(z)$  annihilates polynomial elements of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$ . The polynomial elements of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  are identical with the polynomial elements of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$ . The complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta - \psi)$  which contains no nonzero polynomial. The space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  is the closure of its polynomial elements.

The adjoint of multiplication by  $U(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  whose elements are the elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $U(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\phi)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|U(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(U)}^2$$

is satisfied. The adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta - \psi)$ . Since the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta - \psi)$  contains no nonzero polynomial, the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  annihilates the polynomial elements of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$ .

A Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \eta)$  is defined which is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  and which is the closure of the polynomial elements of the space. The space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  is the closure of its polynomial elements and is contained contractively in the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta)$  which is the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \eta)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . A Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\alpha)$  is defined which is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta)$  and which is the closure of the polynomial elements of the space. The space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\alpha)$ . The space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \eta)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \alpha)$ . The space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \alpha)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$ .

Since the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  and since the space  $\mathcal{L}(\alpha)$  is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ , the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(\alpha)$  onto a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\beta)$  which is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$ . The complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(\beta)$  in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta - \beta)$ . The adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \alpha)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta - \beta)$ . Since the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \eta)$  into a space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta - \psi)$  which contains no nonzero polynomial and since the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \eta)$  is the closure of its polynomial elements, the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  annihilates the elements of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \eta)$ . The adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$ .

Since the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(\alpha)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{L}(\beta)$ , the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\alpha)$  onto  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\beta)$ . The adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\beta)$  onto  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\eta)$ .

Since the space  $\mathcal{L}(\alpha)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta)$ ,  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\alpha)$  is contained isometrically in  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\eta)$ . Since the polynomial elements of the space  $\mathcal{L}(\alpha)$  are the polynomial elements of the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta)$ , the partially isometric transformations of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\alpha)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{L}(\alpha)$  and of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\beta)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{L}(\beta)$  have the same kernel. The space  $\mathcal{L}(\beta)$  which is the image of the space  $\mathcal{L}(\alpha)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  which is the image of the space  $\mathcal{L}(\eta)$ .

The space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta - \beta)$  is the closure of its polynomial elements since it is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  which is the closure of its polynomial elements. Since the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta - \beta)$  is contained contractively in a space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta - \psi)$  which contains no nonzero polynomial, the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta - \beta)$  contains no nonzero element. The space  $\mathcal{L}(\beta)$  is isometrically equal to the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$ . Since the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \alpha)$  is contained in the kernel of the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, it is contained

contractively in the set of elements of the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$  which are included isometrically in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ .

A convex decomposition of a space  $\mathcal{H}$  which satisfies the inequality for difference quotients but does not satisfy the identity of difference quotients is made when the space is contained contractively in a space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  such that the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  is the graph of an injective transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$ .

The space  $\mathcal{H}$  can be assumed isometrically equal to a space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  for a power series  $U(z)$  with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $U(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. A power series  $V(z)$  with operator coefficients exists such that multiplication by  $V(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that

$$W(z) = U(z)V(z),$$

and such that the range of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is orthogonal to the kernel of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

Power series  $A(z)$  and  $C(z)$  with operator coefficients exist by Theorem 5 such that multiplication by  $A(z)$  and multiplication by  $C(z)$  are contractive transformations of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that

$$U(z) = C(z)A(z),$$

such that the space  $\mathcal{H}(C)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  and satisfies the identity for difference quotients, and such that the orthogonal complement in the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  of the set of products  $A(z)f(z)$  with  $f(z)$  a polynomial element of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is the kernel of multiplication by  $C(z)$  as a transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$ .

Power series  $B(z)$  and  $D(z)$  with operator coefficients exist by Theorem 5 such that multiplication by  $B(z)$  and multiplication by  $D(z)$  are contractive transformations of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that

$$V(z) = B(z)D(z),$$

such that the space  $\mathcal{H}(D^*)$  is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{H}(V^*)$  and satisfies the identity for difference quotients, and such that the orthogonal complement in the space  $\mathcal{H}(B^*)$  of elements which are products  $B^*(z)f(z)$  with  $f(z)$  a polynomial element of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is the kernel of multiplication by  $D^*(z)$  as a transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(B^*)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(V^*)$ .

As in the proof of Theorem 5 a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(A)$  into the space  $\mathcal{D}(U)$  is defined by taking  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(C(z)f(z), g(z))$ . A partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(C)$  onto the orthogonal complement of the image of the space  $\mathcal{D}(A)$  in the space  $\mathcal{D}(U)$  is defined by taking  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(f(z), A^*(z)g(z))$ . The kernel of the transformation is the set of pairs  $(f(z), g(z))$  of elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $f(z)$  vanishes and  $g(z)$  belongs to the kernel of multiplication by  $A^*(z)$ .

The space  $\mathcal{D}(U^*)$  is the graph of a transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(U^*)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  since the space  $\mathcal{D}(W^*)$  is the graph of a transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$  onto



the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ . The space  $\mathcal{H}(A^*)$  satisfies the identity for difference quotients since it is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{H}(U^*)$  which satisfies the identity for difference quotients. Multiplication by  $A^*(z)$  annihilates every polynomial element  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $A^*(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(A^*)$ .

As in the proof of Theorem 5 a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(B^*)$  into the space  $\mathcal{D}(V^*)$  is defined by taking  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(D^*(z)f(z), g(z))$ . A partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(D^*)$  onto the orthogonal complement of the image of the space  $\mathcal{D}(B^*)$  in the space  $\mathcal{D}(V^*)$  is defined by taking  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(f(z), B(z)g(z))$ . The kernel of the transformation is the set of pairs  $(f(z), g(z))$  of elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $f(z)$  vanishes and  $g(z)$  belongs to the kernel of multiplication by  $B(z)$ .

The space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$  is the graph of a transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{H}(V^*)$  since the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  is the graph of a transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$ . The space  $\mathcal{H}(B)$  satisfies the identity for difference quotients since it is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$  which satisfies the identity for difference quotients. Multiplication by  $B(z)$  annihilates every polynomial element  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $B(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(B)$ .

The adjoint of multiplication by  $A(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  whose elements are the elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $A(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\theta)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|A(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(A)}^2$$

is satisfied. The orthogonal complement in the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  of the image of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  is the kernel of multiplication by  $C(z)$  as a transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$ .

Since the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  is the graph of a transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$ , the adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself annihilates the elements of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$ . The space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  is contained contractively in the set of elements of the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$  which are included isometrically in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . Since the space  $\mathcal{H}(B)$  satisfies the identity for difference quotients, the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  is contained contractively in the set of elements of the space  $\mathcal{H}(B)$  which are included isometrically in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  is the set of elements  $f(z)$  of the space  $\mathcal{H}(B)$  such that  $A(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\theta)}^2 = \|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(B)}^2 + \|A(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(A)}^2$$

is satisfied.

An element

$$f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$$

of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  belongs to ext  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  if, and only if,  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $(A(z)f(z), -g(z))$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{D}(A)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\theta)}^2 = \|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|^2 + \|(A(z)f(z), -g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(A)}^2$$

is satisfied. Since  $(f(z), -B^*(z)g(z))$  is an element of the space  $\mathcal{D}(B)$  which has the same norm as the element  $f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$  of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$ , an element

$$f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$$

of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  belongs to  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  if, and only if,  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $(A(z)f(z), -g(z))$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{D}(A)$  and  $(-f(z), B^*(z)g(z))$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{D}(B)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\theta)}^2 = \|(A(z)f(z), -g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(A)}^2 + \|(-f(z), B^*(z)g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(B)}^2$$

is satisfied.

The adjoint of multiplication by  $B^*(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  whose elements are the elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $B^*(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(B^*)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\phi)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|B^*(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(B^*)}^2$$

is satisfied. The orthogonal complement in the space  $\mathcal{H}(B^*)$  of the image of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  is the kernel of multiplication by  $A^*(z)$  as a transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(B^*)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(V^*)$ .

Since the space  $\mathcal{D}(W^*)$  is the graph of a transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ , the adjoint of multiplication by  $U^*(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself annihilates the elements of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$ . The space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  is contained contractively in the set of elements of the space  $\mathcal{H}(U^*)$  which are included isometrically in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . Since the space  $\mathcal{H}(A^*)$  satisfies the identity for difference quotients, the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  is contained contractively in the set of elements of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A^*)$  which are included isometrically in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  is the set of elements  $f(z)$  of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A^*)$  such that  $B^*(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(B^*)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\phi)}^2 = \|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(A^*)}^2 + \|B^*(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(B^*)}^2$$

is satisfied.

An element

$$f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$$

of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  belongs to  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  if, and only if,  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $(B^*(z)f(z), -g(z))$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{D}(B^*)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\phi)}^2 = \|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|^2 + \|(B^*(z)f(z), -g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(B^*)}^2$$

is satisfied. Since  $(f(z), -A(z)g(z))$  is an element of the space  $\mathcal{D}(A^*)$  which has the same norm as the element  $f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$  of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$ , an element

$$f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$$

of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  belongs to  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  if, and only if,  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $(B^*(z)f(z), -g(z))$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{D}(B^*)$  and  $(-f(z), A(z)g(z))$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{D}(A^*)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\phi)}^2 = \|(B^*(z)f(z), -g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(B^*)}^2 + \|(-f(z), A(z)g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(A^*)}^2$$

is satisfied.

An isometric transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  onto  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  is defined by taking

$$f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$$

into

$$g(z) + z^{-1}f(z^{-1})$$

with  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . A Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta^*)$  exists,

$$\theta^*(z) = \sum \theta_n^- z^n$$

if

$$\theta(z) = \sum \theta_n z^n.$$

The spaces  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  and  $\mathcal{L}(\theta^*)$  are isometrically equal.

Preparations are made for a convex decomposition.

**Theorem 9.** *If a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$  of power series with vector coefficients satisfies the inequality for difference quotients and is contained contractively in a space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  for a power series  $W(z)$  with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself and such that the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  is the graph of an injective transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$ , then a convex decomposition*

$$\mathcal{H} = (1 - t)\mathcal{H}_+ + t\mathcal{H}_-$$

*applies with  $t$  and  $1 - t$  equal and with  $\mathcal{H}_+$  and  $\mathcal{H}_-$  Hilbert spaces of power series with vector coefficients which satisfy the inequality for difference quotients and which are not isometrically equal when  $\mathcal{H}$  does not satisfy the identity for difference quotients.*

*Proof of Theorem 9.* Previous constructions are assembled in a consistent notation. The space  $\mathcal{H}$  can be assumed isometrically equal to the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  for a power series  $U(z)$  with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $U(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that

$$W(z) = U(z)V(z),$$

and such that the range of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is orthogonal to the kernel of multiplication by  $U(z)$  as a transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

A Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is constructed which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  and is the closure of its polynomial elements such that  $U(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  for every element  $f(z)$  of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  and such that the identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\psi)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|U(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(U)}^2$$

is satisfied. The Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi^*)$  is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  and is the closure of its polynomial elements. If  $f(z)$  is an element of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi^*)$ , then  $V^*(z)f(z)$  is an element of the space  $\mathcal{H}(V^*)$  which satisfies the identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\psi^*)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|V^*(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(V^*)}^2.$$

The contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(U)$  into the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  which takes  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(f(z), V^*(z)g(z))$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(U)$  onto a Hilbert space which is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$ . The contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$  into the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  which takes  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(V(z)f(z), g(z))$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$  onto the complementary space to the image of the space  $\mathcal{D}(U)$  in the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$ .

A Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  and which is the closure of its polynomial elements is defined so that  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  is the set of elements  $h(z)$  of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  in the scalar product determined by the identity

$$\|h(z)\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\theta)}^2 = \|h(z)\|^2 + \|h(z)\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\psi)}^2.$$

The space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta^*)$  is the closure of its polynomial elements.

A power series  $A(z)$  with operator coefficients is defined so that multiplication by  $A(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, so that the adjoint of multiplication by  $A(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$ , and so that the kernel of the transformation contains  $zf(z)$  whenever it contains  $f(z)$ . The space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  is the set of elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $A(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\theta)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|A(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(A)}^2$$

is satisfied. The orthogonal complement in the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  of the image of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  is the set of elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  whose coefficients are annihilated by the adjoint of multiplication by  $A(z)$ . An element

$$f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$$

of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  belongs to  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \theta)$  if, and only if,  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $(A(z)f(z), -g(z))$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{D}(A)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\theta)}^2 = \|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|^2 + \|(a(z)f(z), -g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(A)}^2$$

is satisfied.

A power series  $C(z)$  with operator coefficients exists such that multiplication by  $C(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that

$$U(z) = C(z)A(z),$$

and such that the range of multiplication by  $A(z)$  as a transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is orthogonal to the kernel of multiplication by  $C(z)$  as a transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

The space  $\mathcal{H}(C)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$ . Multiplication by  $C(z)$  is a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  onto the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{H}(C)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$ . The kernel of the transformation is the set of elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  whose coefficients are annihilated by the adjoint of multiplication by  $A(z)$ . A partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  onto the image of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  is defined by taking  $f(z)$  into  $U(z)f(z)$ .

The contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(C)$  into the space  $\mathcal{D}(U)$  which takes  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(f(z), A^*(z)g(z))$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(C)$  onto a Hilbert space which is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{D}(U)$ . The contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(A)$  into the space  $\mathcal{D}(U)$  which takes  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(C(z)f(z), g(z))$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(A)$  onto the complementary space to the image of the space  $\mathcal{D}(C)$  in the space  $\mathcal{D}(U)$ . The kernel of the transformation is the set of pairs  $(f(z), g(z))$  of elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $g(z)$  vanishes and the coefficients of  $f(z)$  are annihilated by the adjoint of multiplication by  $A(z)$ . A partially isometric transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  onto the image of the space  $\mathcal{D}(A)$  is defined by taking  $f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$  into  $(U(z)f(z), -g(z))$ .

A power series  $B(z)$  with operator coefficients is defined so that multiplication by  $B(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, so that the adjoint of multiplication by  $B^*(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta^*)$ , and so that the kernel of the transformation contains  $zf(z)$  whenever it contains  $f(z)$ . The space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta^*)$  is the set of elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $B^*(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(B^*)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\theta^*)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|B^*(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(B^*)}^2$$

is satisfied. The orthogonal complement in the space  $\mathcal{H}(B^*)$  of the image of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \theta^*)$  is the set of elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  whose coefficients are annihilated by the adjoint of multiplication by  $B^*(z)$ . An element

$$f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$$

of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  belongs to  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \theta^*)$  if, and only if,  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $(B^*(z)f(z), -g(z))$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{D}(B^*)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\theta^*)}^2 = \|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|^2 + \|(B^*(z)f(z), -g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(B^*)}^2$$

is satisfied.

A power series  $D(z)$  with operator coefficients exists such that multiplication by  $D(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that

$$V(z) = B(z)D(z),$$

and such that the range of multiplication by  $B^*(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is orthogonal to the kernel of multiplication by  $D^*(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

The space  $\mathcal{H}(D^*)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(V^*)$ . Multiplication by  $D^*(z)$  is a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(B^*)$  into the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{H}(D^*)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(V^*)$ . The kernel of the transformation is the set of elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  whose coefficients are annihilated by the adjoint of multiplication by  $B^*(z)$ . A partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi^*)$  onto the image of the space  $\mathcal{H}(B^*)$  is defined by taking  $f(z)$  into  $V^*(z)f(z)$ .

The contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(D^*)$  into the space  $\mathcal{D}(V^*)$  which takes  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(f(z), B(z)g(z))$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(D^*)$  onto a Hilbert space which is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{D}(V^*)$ . The contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(B^*)$  into the space  $\mathcal{D}(V^*)$  which takes  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(D^*(z)f(z), g(z))$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(B^*)$  onto the complementary space to the image of the space  $\mathcal{D}(D^*)$  in the space  $\mathcal{D}(V^*)$ . The kernel of the transformation is the set of pairs  $(f(z), g(z))$  of elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $g(z)$  vanishes and the coefficients of  $f(z)$  are annihilated by the adjoint of multiplication by  $B^*(z)$ . A partially isometric transformation of ext  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi^*)$  onto the image of the space  $\mathcal{D}(B^*)$  is defined by taking  $f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$  into  $(V^*(z)f(z), -g(z))$ .

The convex decompositions

$$\mathcal{H}(U) = (1 - t)\mathcal{H}(C) + t\mathcal{H}(UB)$$

and

$$\mathcal{H}(V^*) = (1 - t)\mathcal{H}(D^*) + t\mathcal{H}(V^*A^*)$$

apply with  $t$  and  $1 - t$  equal. The spaces  $\mathcal{H}(C)$  and  $\mathcal{H}(UB)$  are isometrically equal if, and only if, the coefficients of every element of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  are annihilated by the adjoint of multiplication by  $U(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, in which case the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  satisfies the identity for difference quotients. The spaces  $\mathcal{H}(D^*)$  and  $\mathcal{H}(V^*A^*)$  are isometrically equal if, and only if, the coefficients of every element of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi^*)$  are annihilated by the adjoint of multiplication by  $V^*(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, in which case the space  $\mathcal{H}(V^*)$  satisfies the identity for difference quotients. The space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  satisfies the identity for difference quotients if, and only if, the space  $\mathcal{H}(V^*)$  satisfies the identity for difference quotients.

This completes the proof of the theorem.

The convex decomposition is compatible with commuting transformations. If  $P(z)$  is a power series with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $P(z)$  is a contractive

transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that the adjoint of multiplication by  $P(z)$  is a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  into itself, and such that the adjoint of multiplication by  $P(z)$  is a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  into itself, then the adjoint of multiplication by  $P(z)$  is a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(C)$  into itself and the adjoint of multiplication by  $P(z)$  is a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(UB)$  into itself.

A Hilbert space of power series with vector coefficients which satisfies the identity for difference quotients determines an invariant subspace when it is suitably confined.

**Theorem 10.** *A Hilbert space of power series with vector coefficients which satisfies the identity for difference quotients is contained isometrically in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  if it is contained contractively in a space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  for a power series  $W(z)$  with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  and multiplication by  $W^*(z)$  are isometric transformations of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.*

*Proof of Theorem 10.* A Hilbert space of power series with vector coefficients which satisfies the identity for difference quotients is by Theorem 2 isometrically equal to a space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  for a power series  $U(z)$  with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $U(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. If the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ , then a power series  $V(z)$  with operator coefficients exists by Theorem 3 such that multiplication by  $V(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that

$$W(z) = U(z)V(z),$$

and such that the range of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is orthogonal to the kernel of multiplication by  $U(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. Multiplication by  $V(z)$  is an isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself since multiplication by  $W(z)$  is an isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. Multiplication by  $U^*(z)$  is an isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself since multiplication by  $W^*(z)$  is an isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

The contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(U)$  into the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  which takes  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(f(z), V^*(z)g(z))$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(U)$  onto a Hilbert space which is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$ . The contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$  into the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  which takes  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(V(z)f(z), g(z))$  acts as partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$  onto the complementary space to the image of the space  $\mathcal{D}(U)$  in the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$ .

The adjoint of multiplication by  $U(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  whose elements are the elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $u(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\phi)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|U(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(U)}^2$$

is satisfied. The adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself takes an element  $f(z)$  of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  into an element  $g(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $W(z)g(z)$

belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ . Since multiplication by  $W(z)$  is an isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, no nonzero element  $g(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  exists such that  $W(z)g(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ . The adjoint of multiplication by  $V(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself annihilates the elements of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$ . The space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$  which is contained isometrically in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ .

The space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$  is the graph of a transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{H}(V^*)$  since the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  is the graph of a transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$ . An element

$$f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$$

of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  belongs to  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  if, and only if,  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $(U(z)f(z), -g(z))$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{D}(U)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\phi)}^2 = \|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|^2 + \|(U(z)f(z), -g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(U)}^2$$

is satisfied. Since  $(f(z), -V^*(z)g(z))$  is an element of the space  $\mathcal{D}(V)$  which has the same norm as the element  $f(z)$  of the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$ , the identity

$$\|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\phi)}^2 = \|(U(z)f(z), -g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(U)}^2 + \|(-f(z), V^*(z)g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(V)}^2$$

is satisfied.

The adjoint of multiplication by  $V^*(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . The complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  whose elements are the elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $V^*(z)f(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(V^*)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{L}(1-\psi)}^2 = \|f(z)\|^2 + \|V^*(z)f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}(V^*)}^2$$

is satisfied. The adjoint of multiplication by  $U^*(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself takes an element  $f(z)$  of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  into an element  $g(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $W^*(z)g(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$ . Since multiplication by  $W^*(z)$  is an isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, no nonzero element  $g(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  exists such that  $W^*(z)g(z)$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$ . The adjoint of multiplication by  $U^*(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself annihilates the elements of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$ . The space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(U^*)$  which is contained isometrically in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ .

The space  $\mathcal{D}(U^*)$  is the graph of a transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(U^*)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  since the space  $\mathcal{D}(W^*)$  is the graph of a transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ . An element

$$f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$$

of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  belongs to  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1 - \psi)$  if, and only if,  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $(V^*(z)f(z), -g(z))$  belongs to the space  $\mathcal{D}(V^*)$ . The identity

$$\|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\psi)}^2 = \|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|^2 + \|(V^*(z)f(z), -g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(V^*)}^2$$



is satisfied. Since  $(f(z), -U(z)g(z))$  is an element of the space  $\mathcal{D}(U^*)$  which has the same norm as the element of the space  $\mathcal{H}(U^*)$ , the identity

$$\|f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\psi)}^2 = \|(-f(z), U(z)g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(U^*)}^2 + \|(V^*(z)f(z), -g(z))\|_{\mathcal{D}(V^*)}^2$$

is satisfied.

Since an isometric transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\psi)$  onto  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\phi)$  is defined by taking

$$f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$$

into

$$g(z) + z^{-1}f(z^{-1})$$

when  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ , the function

$$\phi^*(z) = \psi(z)$$

can be chosen for the function  $\psi(z)$  with

$$\phi^*(z) = \sum \phi_n^- z^n$$

if

$$\phi(z) = \sum \phi_n z^n.$$

A Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  and which is the closure of its polynomial elements is defined so that  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\theta)$  is the set of elements  $h(z)$  of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\phi)$  with scalar product determined by the identity

$$\|h(z)\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\phi)}^2 = \|h(z)\|^2 + \|h(z)\|_{\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(1-\theta)}^2.$$

The space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta^*)$  is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  and is the closure of its polynomial elements.

A power series  $A(z)$  with operator coefficients exists such that multiplication by  $A(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that the adjoint of multiplication by  $A(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$ , and such that the kernel of the transformation contains  $zf(z)$  whenever it contains  $f(z)$ .

The space  $\mathcal{H}(A^*)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(U^*)$ . A power series  $C(z)$  with operator coefficients exists such that multiplication by  $C(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that

$$U(z) = C(z)A(z),$$

and such that the range of multiplication by  $C^*(z)$  as a transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is orthogonal to the kernel of multiplication by  $A^*(z)$  as a transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

The space  $\mathcal{H}(C)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$ . Multiplication by  $C(z)$  is a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  onto the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{H}(C)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$ . A partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  is defined by taking  $f(z)$  into  $A(z)f(z)$ . The orthogonal complement of the image of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  is the set of elements which are annihilated on multiplication by  $C(z)$ . A partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  onto the image of the space  $\mathcal{H}(A)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  is defined by taking  $f(z)$  into  $U(z)f(z)$ .

A power series  $B(z)$  with operator coefficients exists such that multiplication by  $B(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that the adjoint of multiplication by  $B^*(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta^*)$ , and such that the kernel of the transformation contains  $zf(z)$  whenever it contains  $f(z)$ .

The space  $\mathcal{H}(B)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$ . A power series  $D(z)$  with operator coefficients exists such that multiplication by  $D(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that

$$V(z) = B(z)D(z),$$

and such that the range of multiplication by  $D(z)$  as a transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself is orthogonal to the kernel of multiplication by  $B(z)$  as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

The space  $\mathcal{H}(D^*)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(V^*)$ . Multiplication by  $D^*(z)$  is a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(B^*)$  onto the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{H}(D^*)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(V^*)$ . A partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi^*)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(B^*)$  is defined by taking  $f(z)$  into  $B^*(z)f(z)$ . The orthogonal complement of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi^*)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(B^*)$  is the set of elements which are annihilated on multiplication by  $D^*(z)$ . A partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi^*)$  onto the image of the space  $\mathcal{H}(B^*)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(V^*)$  is defined by taking  $f(z)$  into  $V^*(z)f(z)$ .

The contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(B^*)$  into the space  $\mathcal{D}(V^*)$  which takes  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(f(z), B(z)g(z))$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(D^*)$  onto a Hilbert space which is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{D}(V^*)$ . The contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(B^*)$  into the space  $\mathcal{D}(V^*)$  which takes  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(B^*(z)f(z), g(z))$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{D}(B^*)$  onto the complementary space to the image of the space  $\mathcal{D}(D^*)$  in the space  $\mathcal{D}(V^*)$ .

The kernel of the transformation is the set of pairs  $(f(z), g(z))$  of elements of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $g(z)$  vanishes and the coefficients of  $f(z)$  are annihilated by the adjoint of multiplication by  $B^*(z)$ . A partially isometric transformation of ext  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi^*)$  onto the image of the space  $\mathcal{D}(B^*)$  is defined by taking  $f(z) + z^{-1}g(z^{-1})$  into  $(V^*(z)f(z), -g(z))$ . The space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  is mapped onto the image of the space  $\mathcal{H}(B)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  by a partially isometric transformation which takes  $f(z)$  into  $U(z)f(z)$ .

The convex decomposition

$$\mathcal{H}(U) = (1 - t)\mathcal{H}(C) + t\mathcal{H}(UB)$$

applies with  $t$  and  $1 - t$  equal. Since the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  satisfies the identity for difference quotients, the space  $\mathcal{H}(C)$  and  $\mathcal{H}(UB)$  are isometrically equal to the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$ . Since multiplication by  $U(z)$  is a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$  onto the orthogonal complement of the space  $\mathcal{H}(C)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$ , multiplication by  $U(z)$  annihilates every element of the space  $\mathcal{L}(1 - \phi)$ . The space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  is contained isometrically in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ .

This completes the proof of the theorem.

A topology is defined on the space of continuous transformations of a Hilbert space into itself for the construction of invariant subspaces. The definition is made for the coefficient space because of convenience in notation but is applicable to an arbitrary Hilbert space.

An operator is a continuous transformation of the coefficient space  $\mathcal{C}$  into itself. The adjoint of an operator  $S$  is an operator  $S^-$ . Elements of the space are vectors. The scalar product

$$\langle a, b \rangle = b^- a$$

of vectors  $a$  and  $b$  is linear in  $a$  and conjugate linear in  $b$ . The norm  $|c|$  of a vector  $c$  is the nonnegative square root of the scalar self-product

$$|c|^2 = c^- c.$$

If  $a$  and  $b$  are vectors, an operator  $ab^-$  is defined by the associative law

$$(ab^-)c = a(b^-c)$$

for every vector  $c$ . The operator and its adjoint

$$(ab^-)^- = ba^-$$

have range of dimension at most one. Every operator whose range has dimension at most one is equal to  $ab^-$  for some vectors  $a$  and  $b$ .

If  $e_1, \dots, e_r$  is an orthonormal set of vectors whose vector span contains the range of the operator and the range of its adjoint, then

$$a = a_1 e_1 + \dots + a_r e_r$$

for complex numbers

$$a_k = e_k^- a$$

and

$$b = b_1 e_1 + \dots + b_r e_r$$

for complex numbers

$$b_k = e_k^- b.$$

The operator

$$ab^{-} = \sum a_i b_j^{-} e_i e_j^{-}$$

is represented by a square matrix with entry

$$a_i b_j^{-}$$

in the  $i$ -th row and  $j$ -th column for  $i, j = 1, \dots, r$ . The trace

$$b^{-}a = b_1^{-}a_1 + \dots + b_r^{-}a_r$$

of the matrix is a complex number which is independent of the orthonormal set. The adjoint operator

$$ba^{-} = \sum b_i a_j^{-} e_i e_j^{-}$$

is represented by the conjugate transpose matrix which has entry

$$b_i a_j^{-}$$

in the  $i$ -th row and  $j$ -th column for  $i, j = 1, \dots, r$ . The trace

$$a^{-}b = a_1^{-}b_1 + \dots + a_r^{-}b_r$$

of the adjoint operator is the complex conjugate of the trace of the operator.

An operator

$$S = \sum S_{ij} e_i e_j^{-}$$

whose range is contained in the vector span of the orthonormal set and has adjoint

$$S^{-} = \sum S_{ji}^{-} e_i e_j^{-}$$

whose range is contained in the vector span of the orthonormal set is represented by a square matrix with entry

$$S_{ij}$$

in the  $i$ -th row and  $j$ -th column for  $i, j = 1, \dots, r$  and has adjoint represented by the conjugate transpose matrix with entry

$$S_{ji}^{-}$$

in the  $i$ -th row and  $j$ -th column for  $i, j = 1, \dots, r$ . The trace

$$\text{spur } S = S_{11} + \dots + S_{rr}$$

of the operator  $S$  is a sum which is independent of the choice of orthonormal set. The trace

$$\text{spur } S^{-} = S_{11}^{-} + \dots + S_{rr}^{-}$$

of the adjoint operator is the complex conjugate

$$\text{spur } S^{-} = (\text{spur } S)^{-}$$

of the trace of the operator.

If  $T$  is an operator and if

$$S = ab^{-}$$

is an operator whose range has dimension at most one, then the composed operator

$$TS = Tab^{-}$$

has range of dimension at most one. Since

$$S^{-} = ba^{-}$$

has range of dimension at most one, the composed operator

$$S^{-}T^{-} = ba^{-}T^{-}$$

has range of dimension at most one. The trace

$$\text{spur}(S^{-}T^{-}) = a^{-}T^{-}b$$

is the complex conjugate of the trace

$$\text{spur}(TS) = b^{-}Ta.$$

If  $T$  is an operator and if  $S$  is an operator of finite dimensional range, then the composed operator  $TS$  has range of no larger dimension. Since the adjoint operator has range of the same dimension as the dimension of range of  $S^{-}$ , the composed operator  $S^{-}T^{-}$  has range of no larger dimension. The traces of the composed operators  $TS$  and  $S^{-}T^{-}$  are complex conjugates since the operators are adjoints of each other.

The operator norm

$$|S| = \sup |b^{-}Sa|$$

of an operator  $S$  is defined as a least upper bound taken over all vectors  $a$  and  $b$  of norm

$$|a| \leq 1$$

and

$$|b| \leq 1$$

at most one.

The norm of a nonzero operator is positive. The identity

$$|wT| = |w||T|$$

holds for every complex number  $w$  if  $T$  is an operator.

The inequality

$$|S + T| \leq |S| + |T|$$

holds for all operators  $S$  and  $T$ . A contractive operator is an operator  $T$  whose operator norm

$$|T| \leq 1$$

is not greater than one. A contractive operator  $T$  does not increase metric distances: The inequality

$$|Tb - Ta| \leq |b - a|$$

holds for all vectors  $a$  and  $b$ .

The trace norm of an operator  $S$  of finite dimensional range is defined as the least upper bound

$$\|S\| = \sup |\text{spur}(TS)|$$

taken over all contractive operators  $T$ . Since the adjoint of a contractive operator is contractive, the adjoint of  $S^{-}$  of an operator  $S$  of finite dimensional range has the same trace norm

$$\|S^{-}\| = \|S\|$$

as  $S$ . The trace norm of a nonzero operator  $S$  of finite dimensional range is positive. The identity

$$\|wS\| = |w|\|S\|$$

holds for every complex number  $w$  if  $S$  is an operator of finite dimensional range. The inequality

$$\|S + T\| \leq \|S\| + \|T\|$$

holds for all operators  $S$  and  $T$  of finite dimensional range.

The trace class is defined as the completion of the space of operators of finite dimensional range in the metric topology defined by the trace norm. An operator is said to be completely continuous if it is a limit in the metric topology defined by the operator norm of operators of finite dimensional range. Since the inequality

$$|T| \leq \|T\|$$

holds for every operator  $T$  of finite dimensional range, the trace class is contained in the space of completely continuous operators. The trace class is a vector space with norm which is the continuous extension of the trace norm.

If  $T$  is an operator, the function

$$\text{spur}(TS)$$

of operators  $S$  of finite dimensional range admits a unique continuous extension as a function of operators  $S$  of trace class. The inequality

$$|\text{spur}(TS)| \leq |T|\|S\|$$

holds for every operator  $S$  of trace class with  $\|S\|$  defined by continuity in the trace class.

If  $T$  is an operator, the function

$$\text{spur}(ST)$$

of operators  $S$  of finite dimensional range admits a unique continuous extension as a function of operators  $S$  of trace class. The inequality

$$|\text{spur}(TS)| \leq \|T\|\|S\|$$

holds for every operator  $S$  of trace class with  $\|S\|$  defined by continuity in the trace class.

If  $T$  if an operator, the function

$$\text{spur}(ST)$$

of operators  $S$  of finite dimensional range admits a unique continuous extension as a function of operators  $S$  of trace class. The inequality

$$|\text{spur}(ST)| \leq \|S\|\|T\|$$

holds for every operator  $S$  of trace class. The compositions  $ST$  and  $TS$  of an operator  $S$  of trace class and an operator  $T$  are operators of trace class. The identity

$$\text{spur}(S^-T^-) = \text{spur}(ST)^-$$

holds for every operator  $S$  of trace class and every operator  $T$ .

The class of completely continuous operators is a vector space which is complete in the metric topology defined by the operator norm. Every linear functional on the space of completely continuous operators which is continuous for metric topology is defined by an operator  $S$  of trace class and takes a completely continuous operator  $T$  into

$$\text{spur}(TS) = \text{spur}(ST).$$

The Dedekind topology of the space of completely continuous operators is derived from a definition of closure for convex sets. The closure  $B^-$  of a convex set  $B$  of completely continuous operators is defined to be its closure for the metric topology defined by the operator norm. A convex set of completely continuous operators is defined to be open if it is disjoint from the closure to every disjoint convex set of completely continuous operators. A set of completely continuous operators is defined to be open if it is a union of open convex sets. A set of completely continuous operators is defined to be closed if it is the complement of an open set of completely continuous operators. A convex set is closed if, and only if, it is equal to its closure.

The space of completely continuous operators is a Hausdorff space in the Dedekind topology whose open and closed sets are defined from the closure operation on convex sets. The Hahn–Banach theorem applies in the Dedekind topology: If a nonempty open convex set  $A$  is disjoint from a nonempty convex set  $B$ , then  $B$  is contained in a closed convex

set whose complement is convex and contains  $A$ . The Dedekind topology is identical with the metric topology defined by the operator norm since the space of completely continuous operators is complete in the operator norm.

The Dedekind topology of the space of trace class operators is derived from a closure operation on convex sets. The closure  $B^-$  of a convex set  $B$  of trace class operators is defined to be its closure for the metric topology defined by the trace norm. A convex set of trace class operators is defined to be open if it is disjoint from the closure of every disjoint convex set of trace class operators. A set of trace class operators is defined to be open if it is a union of open convex sets of trace class operators. A convex set of trace class operators is closed if, and only if, it is equal to its closure.

The trace class is a Hausdorff space in the topology whose open and closed sets are defined by the closure operation on convex sets. The Hahn–Banach theorem applies in the Dedekind topology: If a nonempty open convex set  $A$  is disjoint from a nonempty convex set  $B$ , then  $B$  is contained in a closed convex set whose complement is convex and contains  $A$ . The Dedekind topology is identical with the metric topology defined by the trace norm since the trace class is complete in the metric topology.

The Dedekind topology of the space of all operators is derived from a closure operation on convex sets. The closure  $B^-$  of a convex set  $B$  of operators is defined to be its closure for the metric topology defined by the operator norm. A convex set of operators is defined to be open if it is disjoint from the closure of every disjoint convex set of operators. A set of operators is defined to be open if it is a union of open convex sets of operators. A convex set of operators is closed if, and only if, it is equal to its closure.

The space of all operators is a Hausdorff space in the topology whose open and closed sets are defined by the closure operation on convex sets. The Hahn–Banach theorem applies in the Dedekind topology: If a nonempty open convex set  $A$  is disjoint from a nonempty convex set  $B$ , then  $B$  is contained in a closed convex set whose complement is convex and contains  $A$ . The Dedekind topology is identical with the metric topology defined by the operator norm since the space of all operators is complete in the metric topology.

The weak topology of the trace class is defined by the space of completely continuous operators. A basic open set for the weak topology is defined as a finite intersection of inverse images of open convex subsets of the complex plane under transformations of the trace class into the complex plane which take  $T$  into

$$\text{spur}(TS)$$

for a completely continuous operator  $S$ . An open set is defined as a union of basic open sets. A closed set is defined as the complement of an open set.

The trace class is a Hausdorff space in the topology whose open and closed sets are defined by the space of completely continuous operators. The Hahn–Banach theorem applies in the weak topology: If a nonempty open convex set  $A$  is disjoint from a nonempty convex set  $B$ , then a closed convex set exists which contains  $B$  and whose complement is convex and contains  $A$ . A convex is closed for the weak topology if, and only if, its image



in the complex plane is a closed convex set under the transformation which takes  $T$  into

$$\text{spur}(TS)$$

for every completely continuous operator  $S$ .

A subset of the trace class is said to be bounded if its image in the complex plane is bounded under the transformation which takes  $T$  into

$$\text{spur}(TS)$$

for every completely continuous operator  $S$ . A subset of the trace class is bounded if, and only if, the set of metric distances

$$\|B - A\|$$

between elements  $A$  and  $B$  of the set is bounded. A closed and bounded subset of the trace class is compact when the trace class is given the weak topology. The inclusion of the trace class given the Dedekind topology in the trace class given the weak topology is continuous.

The weak topology of the space of all operators is defined by the trace class. A basic open set for the weak topology is defined as a finite intersection of inverse images of open convex subsets of the complex plane under transformations of the space of all operators into the complex plane which take  $T$  into

$$\text{spur}(TS)$$

for a trace class operator  $S$ . An open set is defined by a union of basic open sets. A closed set is defined as the complement of an open set.

The space of all operators is a Hausdorff space in the topology whose open and closed sets are defined by the trace class. The Hahn–Banach theorem applies in the weak topology: If a nonempty open convex set  $A$  is disjoint from a nonempty convex set  $B$ , then a closed convex set exists which contains  $B$  and whose complement is convex and contains  $A$ . A convex set is closed for the weak topology if, and only if, its image in the complex plane is a closed convex set under the transformation which takes  $T$  into

$$\text{spur}(TS)$$

for every trace class operator  $S$ .

A subset of the space of all operators is said to be bounded if its image in the complex plane is bounded under the transformation which takes  $T$  into

$$\text{spur}(TS)$$

for every trace class operator  $S$ . A subset of the space of all operators is bounded if, and only if, the set of metric distances

$$|B - A|$$

between elements  $A$  and  $B$  of the set is bounded. A closed and bounded subset of the space of all operators is compact when the space is given the weak topology. The inclusion of the space of all operators given the Dedekind topology in the space of all operators given the weak topology is continuous.

If  $S$  is a completely continuous operator, the norm

$$|S| = \sup |b^- Sa|$$

is a least upper bound taken over all vectors  $a$  and  $b$  of norm at most one which is achieved since the set of all contractive trace class operators whose range has dimension at most one is weakly compact. If  $a$  and  $b$  are vectors of norm at most one such that

$$|S| = |b^- Sa|$$

and if  $S$  does not vanish, then  $a$  and  $b$  are vectors of norm one which can be chosen so that

$$\lambda b = Sa$$

for a complex number  $\lambda$  such that

$$|\lambda| = |S|.$$

The operator

$$S - \lambda ba^-$$

annihilates  $a$  and has adjoint

$$S^- - \lambda^- a^- b$$

which annihilates  $b$ .

If  $S$  does not have finite dimensional range, a sequence of completely continuous operators  $S_n$  is defined inductively for nonnegative integers  $n$  starting with

$$S_0 = S.$$

When  $S_n$  is defined, vectors  $a_n$  and  $b_n$  of norm one are chosen so that

$$\lambda_n b_n = S_n a_n$$

for a complex number  $\lambda_n$  such that

$$|\lambda_n| = |S_n|.$$

An orthonormal set of vectors  $a_n$  and an orthonormal set of vectors  $b_n$  are defined for nonnegative integers  $n$ . A property of completely continuous operators implies that the numbers  $\lambda_n$  converge to zero.

Whenever an orthonormal set of vectors  $e_n$  is defined for nonnegative integers  $n$ , then the action

$$S e_n$$

of a completely continuous operator  $S$  on the vectors produces a sequence of vectors which converge to zero. The stated property is immediate when the operator has finite dimensional range. The property follows for every completely continuous operator since the operator is a limit in the metric topology defined by the operator norm of operators of finite dimensional range.

The structure of completely continuous operators determines the structure of trace class operators since every operator which is of trace class is completely continuous. If a trace class operator  $S$  does not have finite dimensional range, then an orthonormal set of vectors  $a_n$  and an orthonormal set of vectors  $b_n$  are defined for nonnegative integers  $n$  so that

$$\lambda_n b_n = S a_n$$

for a complex number  $\lambda_n$  for every  $n$  and such that

$$\|S\| = \sum |\lambda_n|.$$

A compact convex set is the closed convex span of its extreme points by the Krein–Milman theorem. Examples of compact convex sets are found in the space of all operators given the weak topology.

An extreme point of a convex set is an element  $c$  of the set which is not a convex combination

$$c = (1 - t)a + tb$$

of distinct elements  $a$  and  $b$  of the set with  $t$  and  $1 - t$  positive.

The image of a compact convex set  $B$  of operators is a compact convex subset of the complex plane under the transformation which takes  $T$  into

$$\text{spur}(TS)$$

for every trace class operator  $S$ . The image of an extreme point of  $B$  is an extreme point of the image of  $B$ .

The elements of  $B$  which are mapped into an extreme point of the image of  $B$  have properties which are taken as the definition of a face of  $B$ . A face of  $B$  is a nonempty closed convex subset of  $B$  such that elements  $a$  and  $b$  of  $B$  belong to the subset whenever some convex combination

$$(1 - t)a + tb$$

with  $t$  and  $1 - t$  positive belongs to the subset.

A nonempty compact convex set has a face since the full set meets the definition of a face. An intersection of faces is a face if it is nonempty. If a nonempty class of faces has the property that every finite intersection is nonempty, then the intersection of all members of the class is nonempty. Every face contains a minimal face.

A face which contains more than one element is not minimal since the image of the face contains more than one element under the transformation which takes  $T$  into

$$\text{spur}(TS)$$

for some trace class operator  $S$ . The unique element of a minimal face of a nonempty compact convex set is an extreme point of the set.

If an operator does not belong to the closed convex span of the extreme points of a nonempty compact convex set, then the image of the operator in the complex plane does not belong to the closed convex span of the images of extreme points under the transformation which takes  $T$  into

$$\text{spur}(TS)$$

for some trace class operator  $S$ . Such an operator does not belong to the compact convex set since otherwise an extreme point can be constructed which has not previously been observed.

An application of the Krein–Milman theorem is made to the existence of invariant subspaces of a contractive transformation of a Hilbert space into itself which has an isometric adjoint. Since the coefficient space is an unrestricted Hilbert space, it can be assumed without loss of generality that the space is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  and that the transformation takes  $f(z)$  into  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$ . The kernel of the transformation is an invariant subspace which is of interest when it contains a nonzero element. When the kernel contains no nonzero element, an isometric transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\phi)$  onto  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  is defined by taking a Laurent series into the power series which has the same coefficient of  $z^n$  for every nonnegative integer  $n$ . The transformation of the space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  into itself which takes  $f(z)$  into  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  is unitarily equivalent to the transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\phi)$  into itself which takes  $f(z)$  into  $z^{-1}f(z)$ .

The Krein–Milman theorem is applied to the construction of closed subspaces of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\phi)$  which are invariant under multiplication by  $z$  and under division by  $z$ . The Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  is arbitrary. The Herglotz spaces which are contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  form a convex set. An extreme point of the set is a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  such that  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is contained isometrically in  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\phi)$ . A topology is defined on the convex set to meet the compactness hypothesis of the Krein–Milman theorem.

If a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{P}$  is contained contractively in a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$ , the adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$  is a transformation of  $\mathcal{H}$  into  $\mathcal{P}$  which is treated as a transformation  $P$  of  $\mathcal{H}$  into itself on composition with the inclusion of  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ . The self-adjoint transformation  $P$  is nonnegative and contractive.

A nonnegative and contractive transformation  $P$  of  $\mathcal{H}$  into itself coincides with the adjoint of the inclusion in  $\mathcal{H}$  of a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{P}$  which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{H}$ . The range of the transformation  $P$  is dense in the space  $\mathcal{P}$ . The identity

$$\langle Pa, Pb \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} = \langle a, Pb \rangle_{\mathcal{H}}$$

defines the scalar product of those elements of  $\mathcal{P}$  which belong to the range of  $P$ . The space  $\mathcal{P}$  is the completion of the range of  $P$  in the metric topology defined by the norm. The scalar product of  $\mathcal{P}$  is defined by continuity.

Hilbert spaces which are contained contractively in a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$  are in one-to-one correspondence with nonnegative and contractive transformations of  $\mathcal{H}$  into itself. The correspondence is a homomorphism of convex structure: If Hilbert spaces  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{Q}$  are contained contractively in  $\mathcal{H}$  and if the Hilbert space

$$(1 - t)\mathcal{P} + t\mathcal{Q}$$

is a convex combination of  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{Q}$ , then the adjoint of the inclusion of the space in  $\mathcal{H}$  coincides with

$$(1 - t)P + tQ$$

with  $P$  the adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$  and  $Q$  the adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ .

The adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{H}$  in itself is multiplication by the number one. Multiplication by the number zero coincides with the adjoint of the inclusion in  $\mathcal{H}$  of the Hilbert space containing no nonzero element. If a nonnegative and contractive transformation  $P$  coincides with the adjoint of the inclusion of a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ , then the nonnegative and contractive transformation  $1 - P$  coincides with the adjoint of the inclusion in  $\mathcal{H}$  of the complementary space to  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ .

The set of all Hilbert spaces which are contained contractively in a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$  is a compact convex set when given the topology obtained from the weak topology of the space of all nonnegative and contractive transformations of  $\mathcal{H}$  into itself. The topology of transformations is transferred to a topology of spaces by treating the isomorphism of convex structure as a homeomorphism.

The convex set of all Hilbert spaces which are contained contractively in a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$  is the closed convex span of its extreme points by the Krein–Milman theorem. A Hilbert space which is contained contractively in  $\mathcal{H}$  is an extreme point of the convex set if, and only if, it is contained isometrically in  $\mathcal{H}$ . The identity

$$P^2 = P$$

characterizes the adjoint  $P$  of the inclusion in  $\mathcal{H}$  of a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{P}$  which is contained isometrically in  $\mathcal{H}$ . The transformation is the orthogonal projection of  $\mathcal{H}$  onto  $\mathcal{P}$ .

Another application of the Krein–Milman theorem is given to the convex set of all Herglotz spaces which are contained contractively in a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$ . The convex set is compact since it is closed subset of a compact set. The convex set is the closed convex span of its extreme points. The extreme points are the Herglotz spaces  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  such that  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is contained isometrically in  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\phi)$ . Closed subspaces of a Hilbert space which are invariant subspaces for an isometric transformation of the space into itself and for its inverse are obtained by a computation of Herglotz spaces  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  contained contractively in a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  such that  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is contained isometrically in  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\phi)$ .

A continuous function  $f(w)$  of  $w$  in the unit circle is parametrized by the function

$$w = \exp(it)$$

of  $t$  in the real line. A Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  which is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  is constructed when the function  $f(\omega)$  of  $\omega$  takes its values in the interval  $[0, 1]$ . A construction of ext  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is made in ext  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$ .

A Laurent series

$$2\pi(1+r)h_r(z) = \sum \int \left(\frac{1}{2} e^{-it}z + \frac{1}{2}e^{it}z^{-1}\right)^n f(e^{it})dt$$

is defined for every nonnegative integer  $r$  as a sum from  $n$  equal to zero to  $n$  equal  $r$  of Stieltjes integrals over the unit circle. The coefficient of  $z^n$  in  $h_r(z)$  vanishes when  $n$  is greater than  $r$  or less than  $-r$ . The Laurent series represents a function whose values on the unit circle belong to the interval  $[0, 1]$ .

A polynomial  $U_r(z)$  of degree at most  $r$  exists such that multiplication by  $U_r(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself and such that

$$h_r(z) = U_r(z)U_r^*(z^{-1}).$$

Since the polynomial has complex numbers as coefficients, multiplication by  $U_r(z)$  is a partially isometric transformation of ext  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  onto ext  $\mathcal{L}(\psi_r)$  for a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi_r)$  which is contained in the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$ .

A polynomial  $V_r(z)$  of degree at most  $r$  exists such that multiplication by  $V_r(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself and such that

$$1 - h_r(z) = V_r(z)V_r^*(z^{-1}).$$

Since the polynomial has complex coefficients, multiplication by  $V_r(z)$  is a partially isometric transformation of ext  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  onto ext  $\mathcal{L}(\theta_r)$  for a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta_r)$  which is contained contractively in the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$ .

The Herglotz spaces  $\mathcal{L}(\psi_r)$  and  $\mathcal{L}(\theta_r)$  are complementary spaces in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  since the identity

$$1 = U_r(z)U_r^*(z^{-1}) + V_r(z)V_r^*(z^{-1})$$

implies that ext  $\mathcal{L}(\psi_r)$  and ext  $\mathcal{L}(\theta_r)$  are contained contractively in ext  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  as complementary spaces to each other. The adjoint of the inclusion of ext  $\mathcal{L}(\psi_r)$  in ext  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  coincides with multiplication by

$$U_r(z)U_r^*(z^{-1})$$

as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  into itself. The adjoint of the inclusion of ext  $\mathcal{L}(\theta_r)$  in ext  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  coincides with multiplication by

$$V_r(z)V_r^*(z^{-1})$$

as a transformation of ext  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  into itself.

A Laurent series

$$h(z) = \lim h_r(z)$$

with complex coefficients is defined formally as a limit in which the coefficient of  $z^n$  on the left is a limit of coefficients of  $z^n$  on the right for every integer  $n$ . If

$$h(z) = \sum \lambda_n z^n,$$

then

$$2\pi\lambda_n = \int e^{-int} f(e^{it}) dt$$

is a Stieltjes integral over the unit circle for every integer  $n$ . A Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  which is contained contractively in the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  exists such that the adjoint of the inclusion of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\psi)$  in  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\phi)$  coincides with multiplication by  $h(z)$  as a transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\phi)$  into itself.

The continuous functions  $f(\omega)$  of  $\omega$  in the unit circle whose values are taken in the interval  $[0, 1]$  form a convex set in which convex combinations of functions are defined by convex combinations of function values. The parametrization of Herglotz spaces which are contained contractively in the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  is a homomorphism of convex structure. The space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  is parametrized by the function which is identically one. The function which is identically zero parametrizes a Herglotz space which contains no nonzero element.

If  $f(\omega)$  and  $g(\omega)$  are continuous functions of  $\omega$  in the unit circle whose values are taken in the interval  $[0, 1]$  and which satisfy the inequality

$$f(\omega) \leq g(\omega)$$

for every element  $\omega$  of the unit circle, then the Herglotz space parametrized by the function  $f(\omega)$  of  $\omega$  is contained contractively in the Herglotz space parametrized by the function  $g(\omega)$  of  $\omega$ .

A Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  which is contained contractively in the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  is parametrized by a closed subset  $C$  of the unit circle. The space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is contained contractively in every Herglotz space parametrized by a continuous function with value one at every element of  $C$ . When a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  is contained contractively in every Herglotz space parametrized by a continuous function with value one at every element of  $C$ , the space  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$ . The adjoint of the inclusion of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\psi)$  in  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\phi)$  coincides with multiplication by the Laurent series

$$h(z) = \sum \lambda_n z^n$$

whose  $n$ -th coefficient

$$2\pi\lambda_n = \int e^{-int} f(e^{it}) dt$$

is defined as a Stieltjes integral over  $C$  for every integer  $n$ . The inclusion of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\psi)$  in  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\phi)$  is isometric. The adjoint of the inclusion is an orthogonal projection.

The Baire class of subsets of the unit circle is defined as the smallest class of subsets which contains the closed sets, which contains the complement of every set of the class, and which contains every countable union of sets in the class.

A Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  which is contained contractively in the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  is parametrized by every Baire subset  $C$  of the unit circle. The inclusion of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\psi)$  in  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\phi)$  is isometric. The orthogonal projection of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\phi)$  onto  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\psi)$  coincides with multiplication by the Laurent series

$$h(z) = \sum \lambda_n z^n$$

whose  $n$ -th coefficient

$$2\pi\lambda_n = \int e^{-int} f(e^{it}) dt$$

is defined as a Lebesgue integral over  $C$  for every integer  $n$ .

The spectrum of multiplication by  $z$  as a transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\phi)$  into itself is defined as the smallest closed subset of the unit circle which is assigned the orthogonal projection of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\phi)$  onto itself. The orthogonal projection assigned to a Baire subset of the unit circle is identical with the orthogonal projection assigned to the intersection of the Baire set with the spectrum.

A Baire function is a function  $f(\omega)$  of  $\omega$  in the unit circle which is a pointwise limit of elements of a countable set of continuous functions. A function  $f(\omega)$  of  $\omega$  in the unit circle is a Baire function if, and only if, the inverse image of every closed subset of the complex plane is a Baire set.

If  $f(\omega)$  is a Baire function of  $\omega$  in the unit circle which is bounded on the spectrum, a continuous transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\phi)$  into itself is defined as a Lebesgue integral

$$\int f(\omega) dP(\omega)$$

of orthogonal projections  $P$  assigned to Baire subsets of the spectrum. The transformation commutes with every continuous transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\phi)$  into itself which commutes with multiplication by  $z$ . When the values of the function are taken in the interval  $[0, 1]$ , the transformation coincides with the adjoint of the inclusion in  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\phi)$  of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\psi)$  for a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  which is contained contractively in the Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$ . The transformation is multiplication by  $z$  when  $f(\omega) = \omega$  and is division by  $z$  when  $f(\omega) = \omega^{-1}$ . If  $f(z)$  is a polynomial in  $z$ , the transformation defined by the function  $f(\omega)$  of  $\omega$  is multiplication by  $f(z)$ . If  $f(z)$  is a polynomial in  $z^{-1}$ , the transformation defined by the function  $f(\omega)$  of  $\omega$  is multiplication by  $f(z)$ .

Lebesgue integration computes the invariant subspaces whose existence is given by the Krein–Milman theorem. If a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is contained contractively in a Herglotz space  $\mathcal{L}(\phi)$  and if  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is defined as an integral of projections, then  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\psi)$  is an invariant subspace for every continuous transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\phi)$  into itself which commutes with multiplication by  $z$ . The restricted transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\psi)$  into itself is contractive if the transformation of  $\text{ext } \mathcal{L}(\phi)$  into itself is contractive.

The construction of invariant subspaces for contractive transformations of a Hilbert space into itself resembles the construction made by Hilbert for transformations with isometric adjoint. Herglotz spaces are replaced by canonical models of contractive transformations.



If  $W(z)$  is a power series with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, then invariant subspaces are constructed for the contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  into itself which takes  $f(z)$  into  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  for every element  $f(z)$  of the space.

If  $P(z)$  is a power series with complex coefficients such that multiplication by  $P(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, then the adjoint of multiplication by  $P(z)$  acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  into itself which commutes with the transformation taking  $f(z)$  into  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$ .

The adjoint of multiplication by  $P(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  onto a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$  which is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ . The adjoint of multiplication by  $P(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the augmented space  $\mathcal{H}(W')$ ,

$$W'(z) = zW(z)$$

onto a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}'$  which is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W')$ . The space  $\mathcal{H}'$  is the set of elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  belongs to  $\mathcal{H}$  with scalar product determined by the identity

$$\|[f(z) - f(0)]/z\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 = \|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{H}'}^2 - |f(0)|^2.$$

The space  $\mathcal{H}$  satisfies the inequality for difference quotients since it is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}'$ .

If  $Q(z)$  is a power series with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $Q(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself and such that

$$Q(z)W(z) = W(z)Q(z),$$

then the adjoint of multiplication by  $Q(z)$  acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  into itself. The adjoint of multiplication by  $Q(z)$  acts as a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{H}$  into itself since

$$P(z)Q(z) = Q(z)P(z).$$

The existence of invariant subspaces for a contractive transformation of a Hilbert space into itself is an application of the Krein–Milman theorem.

**Theorem 11.** *If a contractive transformation of a Hilbert space into itself is not a scalar multiple of the identity transformation, then a closed subspace of the Hilbert space other than the least subspace and the greatest subspace exists which is an invariant subspace for every contractive transformation of the Hilbert space into itself which commutes with the given transformation.*

*Proof of Theorem 11.* Since a contractive transformation  $T$  of a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$  into itself can be multiplied by a positive number without change of its invariant subspaces, it can be assumed without loss of generality that the limit

$$\lim \|T^n h\|_{\mathcal{H}}$$

taken over the positive integers  $n$  vanishes for every element  $h$  of the space and that the same condition is satisfied when  $T$  is replaced by its adjoint  $T^*$ .

A closed subspace is an invariant subspace for every contractive transformation which commutes with  $T$  if, and only if, its orthogonal complement is an invariant subspace for every contractive transformation which commutes with  $T^*$ . Since  $T$  can be replaced by  $T^*$ , the dimension of the closure of the range of  $1 - T^*T$  can be assumed less than or equal to the dimension of the closure of the range of  $1 - TT^*$ .

A coefficient space  $\mathcal{C}$  is chosen whose dimension is equal to the dimension of the closure of the range of  $1 - T^*T$ . The hypothesis on iterates of  $T$  implies that the transformation is unitarily equivalent to the transformation which takes  $f(z)$  into  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  in a Hilbert space of power series with vector coefficients which satisfies the identity for difference quotients and is contained isometrically in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ .

The space is a space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  for a power series  $W(z)$  with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. Since the dimension of the coefficient space is less than or equal to the dimension of the closure of the range of  $1 - TT^*$ , the power series can be chosen so that multiplication by  $W(z)$  annihilates no nonzero vector. Since the kernel of multiplication by  $W(z)$  contains  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  whenever it contains  $f(z)$ , multiplication by  $W(z)$  is an isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

The transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  into the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$  whose graph is the space  $\mathcal{D}(W)$  is injective by the hypothesis on the iterates of  $T^*$ . Since the space  $\mathcal{D}(W^*)$  is the graph of a transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$  onto the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ , multiplication by  $W^*(z)$  annihilates no nonzero vector. Since the space  $\mathcal{H}(W^*)$  satisfies the identity for difference quotients, the space is contained isometrically in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ . Since multiplication by  $W^*(z)$  is a partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself whose kernel contains no nonzero element, multiplication by  $W^*(z)$  is an isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself.

A compact convex set is constructed whose elements are Hilbert spaces which are contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  and which satisfy the inequality for difference quotients. The adjoint of multiplication by  $P(z)$  is required to act as a contractive transformation of a space into itself whenever  $P(z)$  is a power series with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $P(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself such that the adjoint of multiplication by  $P(z)$  acts as a contractive transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  into itself.

The convex set is compact since it is a closed subset of the compact convex set of Hilbert spaces which are contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ . The convex set is closed since it is defined by contractive inclusions of spaces which are contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ . Contractiveness of an inclusion is tested by trace class operations. The inequality for difference quotients is tested as a contractive inclusion of a space in its augmented space.

Since the transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  into itself which takes  $f(z)$  into  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  is by hypothesis not a scalar multiple of the identity transformation, it acts as a

partially isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  onto a Hilbert space which belongs to the convex set and is not a convex combination of the least subspace and the greatest subspace of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ . The convex set is the closed convex span of its extreme points by the Krein–Milman theorem since it is compact. An extreme point exists other than the least subspace and the greatest subspace of the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ .

An extreme point is a space which is contained isometrically in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  by Theorem 9 since multiplication by  $W(z)$  and multiplication by  $W^*(z)$  are isometric transformations of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself. The space is an invariant subspace for every commuting transformation by Theorem 7.

This completes the proof of the theorem.

The relationship between factorization and invariant subspaces applies to a larger class of power series with operator coefficients. The power series are transfer functions of canonical linear systems whose state space is given an indefinite scalar product but whose topology is identical with that of a Hilbert space.

A Krein space is a vector space with scalar product which is the orthogonal sum of a Hilbert space and the anti-space of a Hilbert space. A Krein space is characterized as a vector space with scalar product which is self-dual for a norm topology.

**Theorem 12.** *A vector space with scalar product is a Krein space if it admits a norm which satisfies the convexity identity*

$$\|(1-t)a + tb\|^2 + t(1-t)\|b - a\|^2 = (1-t)\|a\|^2 + t\|b\|^2$$

for all elements  $a$  and  $b$  of the space when  $0 < t < 1$  and if the linear functionals on the space which are continuous for the metric topology defined by the norm are the linear functionals which are continuous for the weak topology induced by duality of the space with itself.

*Proof of Theorem 12.* Norms on the space are considered which satisfy the hypotheses of the theorem. The hypotheses imply that the space is complete in the metric topology defined by any such norm. If a norm  $\|c\|_+$  is given for elements  $c$  of the space, a dual norm  $\|c\|_-$  for elements  $c$  of the space is defined by the least upper bound

$$\|a\|_- = \sup |\langle a, b \rangle|$$

taken over the elements  $b$  of the space such that

$$\|b\|_+ < 1.$$

The least upper bound is finite since every linear functional which is continuous for the weak topology induced by self-duality is assumed continuous for the metric topology. Since every linear functional which is continuous for the metric topology is continuous for the weak topology induced by self-duality, the set of elements  $a$  of the space such that

$$\|a\|_- \leq 1$$

is compact in the weak topology induced by self-duality. The set of elements  $a$  of the space such that

$$\|a\|_- < 1$$

is open for the metric topology induced by the plus norm. The set of elements  $b$  of the space such that

$$\|b\|_+ \leq 1$$

is compact in the weak topology induced by self-duality.

The convexity identity

$$\|(1-t)a + tb\|_+^2 + t(1-t)\|b-a\|_+^2 = (1-t)\|a\|_+^2 + t\|b\|_+^2$$

holds by hypothesis for all elements  $a$  and  $b$  of the space when  $0 < t < 1$ . It will be shown that the convexity identity

$$\|(1-t)u + tv\|_-^2 + t(1-t)\|v-u\|_-^2 = (1-t)\|u\|_-^2 + t\|v\|_-^2$$

holds for all elements  $u$  and  $v$  of the space when  $0 < t < 1$ . Use is made of the convexity identity

$$\begin{aligned} &\langle (1-t)a + tb, (1-t)u + tv \rangle + t(1-t)\langle b-a, v-u \rangle \\ &= (1-t)\langle a, u \rangle + t\langle b, v \rangle \end{aligned}$$

for elements  $a, b, u$ , and  $v$  of the space when  $0 < t < 1$ . Since the inequality

$$\begin{aligned} &|(1-t)\langle a, u \rangle + t\langle b, v \rangle| \\ &\leq \|(1-t)a + tb\|_+ \|(1-t)u + tv\|_- + t(1-t)\|b-a\|_+ \|v-u\|_- \end{aligned}$$

holds by the definition of the minus norm, the inequality

$$\begin{aligned} |(1-t)\langle a, u \rangle + t\langle b, v \rangle|^2 &\leq [ \|(1-t)a + tb\|_+^2 + t(1-t)\|b-a\|_+^2 ] \\ &\quad \times [ \|(1-t)u + tv\|_-^2 + t(1-t)\|v-u\|_-^2 ] \end{aligned}$$

is satisfied. The inequality

$$\begin{aligned} |(1-t)\langle a, u \rangle + t\langle b, v \rangle|^2 &\leq [(1-t)\|a\|_+^2 + t\|b\|_+^2] \\ &\quad \times [ \|(1-t)u + tv\|_-^2 + t(1-t)\|v-u\|_-^2 ] \end{aligned}$$

holds by the convexity identity for the plus norm. The inequality is applied for all elements  $a$  and  $b$  of the space such that the inequalities

$$\|a\|_+ \leq \|u\|_-$$

and

$$\|b\|_+ \leq \|v\|_-$$

are satisfied. The inequality

$$(1-t)\|u\|_-^2 + t\|v\|_-^2 \leq \|(1-t)u + tv\|_-^2 + t(1-t)\|v-u\|_-^2$$

follows by the definition of the minus norm. Equality holds since the reverse inequality is a consequence of the identities

$$(1-t)[(1-t)u + tv] + t[(1-t)u - (1-t)v] = (1-t)u$$

and

$$[(1-t)u + tv] - [(1-t)u - (1-t)v] = v.$$

It has been verified that the minus norm satisfies the hypotheses of the theorem. The dual norm to the minus norm is the plus norm. Another norm which satisfies the hypotheses of the theorem is defined by

$$\|c\|_t^2 = (1-t)\|c\|_+^2 + t\|c\|_-^2$$

when  $0 < t < 1$ . Since the inequalities

$$|\langle a, b \rangle| \leq \|a\|_+ \|b\|_-$$

and

$$|\langle a, b \rangle| \leq \|a\|_- \|b\|_+$$

hold for all elements  $a$  and  $b$  of the space, the inequality

$$|\langle a, b \rangle| \leq (1-t)\|a\|_+ \|b\|_- + t\|a\|_- \|b\|_+$$

holds when  $0 < t < 1$ . The inequality

$$|\langle a, b \rangle| \leq \|a\|_t \|b\|_{1-t}$$

follows for all elements  $a$  and  $b$  of the space when  $0 < t < 1$ . The inequality implies that the dual norm of the  $t$  norm is dominated by the  $1-t$  norm. A norm which dominates its dual norm is obtained when  $t = \frac{1}{2}$ .

Consider the norms which satisfy the hypotheses of the theorem and which dominate their dual norms. Since a nonempty totally ordered set of such norms has a greatest lower bound, which is again such a norm, a minimal such norm exists by the Zorn lemma. If a minimal norm is chosen as the plus norm, it is equal to the  $t$ -norm obtained when  $t = \frac{1}{2}$ . It follows that a minimal norm is equal to its dual norm.

If a norm satisfies the hypotheses of the theorem and is equal to its dual norm, a related scalar product is introduced on the space which may be different from the given scalar product. Since the given scalar product assumes a subsidiary role in the subsequent argument, it is distinguished by a prime. A new scalar product is defined by the identity

$$4\langle a, b \rangle = \|a + b\|^2 - \|a - b\|^2 + i\|a + ib\|^2 - i\|a - ib\|^2.$$

The symmetry of a scalar product is immediate. Linearity will be verified.

The identity

$$\langle wa, wb \rangle = w^{-1}w \langle a, b \rangle$$

holds for all elements  $a$  and  $b$  of the space if  $w$  is a complex number. The identity

$$\langle ia, b \rangle = i \langle a, b \rangle$$

holds for all elements  $a$  and  $b$  of the space. The identity

$$\langle ta, b \rangle = t \langle a, b \rangle$$

will be verified for all elements  $a$  and  $b$  of the space when  $t$  is a positive number. It is sufficient to verify the identity

$$\|ta + b\|^2 - \|ta - b\|^2 = t\|a + b\|^2 - t\|a - b\|^2$$

since a similar identity follows with  $b$  replaced by  $ib$ . The identity holds since

$$\|ta + b\|^2 + t\|a - b\|^2 = t(1 + t)\|a\|^2 + (1 + t)\|b\|^2$$

and

$$\|ta - b\|^2 + t\|a + b\|^2 = t(1 + t)\|a\|^2 + (1 + t)\|b\|^2$$

by the convexity identity.

If  $a, b$ , and  $c$  are elements of the space and if  $0 < t < 1$ , the identity

$$\begin{aligned} 4\langle (1-t)a + tb, c \rangle &= \|(1+t)(a+c) + t(b+c)\|^2 \\ &- \|(1-t)(a-c) + t(b-c)\|^2 + i\|(1-t)(a+ic) + t(b+ic)\|^2 \\ &- i\|(1-t)(a-ic) + t(b-ic)\|^2 \end{aligned}$$

is satisfied with the right side equal to

$$\begin{aligned} &(1-t)\|a+c\|^2 + t\|b+c\|^2 - (1-t)\|a-c\|^2 - t\|b-c\|^2 \\ &+ i(1-t)\|a+ic\|^2 + it\|b+ic\|^2 - i(1-t)\|a-ic\|^2 - it\|b-ic\|^2 \\ &= 4(1-t)\langle a, c \rangle + 4t\langle b, c \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

The identity

$$\langle (1-t)a + tb, c \rangle = (1-t)\langle a, c \rangle + t\langle b, c \rangle$$

follows.

Linearity of a scalar product is now easily verified. Scalar self-products are nonnegative since the identity

$$\langle c, c \rangle = \|c\|^2$$

holds a for every element  $c$  of the space. A Hilbert space is obtained whose norm is the minimal norm. Since the inequality

$$|\langle a, b \rangle'| \leq \|a\| \|b\|$$

holds for all elements  $a$  and  $b$  of the space, a contractive transformation  $J$  of the Hilbert space into itself exists such that the identity

$$\langle a, b \rangle' = \langle Ja, b \rangle$$

holds for all elements  $a$  and  $b$  of the space. The symmetry of the given scalar product implies that the transformation  $J$  is self-adjoint. Since the Hilbert space norm is self-dual with respect to the given scalar product, the transformation  $J$  is also isometric with respect to the Hilbert space scalar product. The space is the orthogonal sum of the space of eigenvectors of  $J$  for the eigenvalue one and the space of eigenvectors of  $J$  for the eigenvalue minus one. These spaces are also orthogonal with respect to the given scalar product. They are the required Hilbert space and anti-space of a Hilbert space for the orthogonal decomposition of the vector space with scalar product to form a Krein space.

This completes the proof of the theorem.

The orthogonal decomposition of a Krein space is not unique since equivalent norms can be used. The dimension of the anti-space of a Hilbert space in the decomposition is however an invariant called the Pontryagin index of the Krein space. Krein spaces are a natural context for a complementation theory which was discovered in Hilbert spaces [5].

A generalization of the concept of orthogonal complement applies when a Krein space  $\mathcal{P}$  is contained continuously and contractively in a Krein space  $\mathcal{H}$ . The contractive property of the inclusion means that the inequality

$$\langle a, a \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} \leq \langle a, a \rangle_{\mathcal{P}}$$

holds for every element  $a$  of  $\mathcal{P}$ . Continuity of the inclusion means that an adjoint transformation of  $\mathcal{H}$  into  $\mathcal{P}$  exists. A self-adjoint transformation  $P$  of  $\mathcal{H}$  into  $\mathcal{H}$  is obtained on composing the inclusion with the adjoint. The inequality

$$\langle Pc, Pc \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} \leq \langle Pc, Pc \rangle_{\mathcal{P}}$$

for elements  $c$  of  $\mathcal{H}$  implies the inequality

$$\langle P^2c, c \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} \leq \langle Pc, c \rangle_{\mathcal{H}}$$

for elements  $c$  of  $\mathcal{H}$ , which is restated as an inequality

$$P^2 \leq P$$

for self-adjoint transformations in  $\mathcal{H}$ .

The properties of adjoint transformations are used in the construction of a complementary space  $\mathcal{Q}$  to  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ .

**Theorem 13.** *If a Krein space  $\mathcal{P}$  is contained continuously and contractively in a Krein space  $\mathcal{H}$ , then a unique Krein space  $\mathcal{Q}$  exists, which is contained continuously and contractively in  $\mathcal{H}$ , such that the inequality*

$$\langle c, c \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} \leq \langle a, a \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} + \langle b, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}$$

*holds whenever  $c = a + b$  with  $a$  in  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $b$  in  $\mathcal{Q}$  and such that every element  $c$  of  $\mathcal{H}$  admits some such decomposition for which equality holds.*

*Proof of Theorem 13.* Define  $\mathcal{Q}$  to be the set of elements  $b$  of  $\mathcal{H}$  such that the least upper bound

$$\langle b, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} = \sup[\langle a + b, a + b \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} - \langle a, a \rangle_{\mathcal{P}}]$$

taken over all elements  $a$  of  $\mathcal{P}$  is finite. It will be shown that  $\mathcal{Q}$  is a vector space with scalar product having the desired properties. Since the origin belongs to  $\mathcal{P}$ , the inequality

$$\langle b, b \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} \leq \langle b, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}$$

holds for every element  $b$  of  $\mathcal{Q}$ . Since the inclusion of  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$  is contractive, the origin belongs to  $\mathcal{Q}$  and has self-product zero. If  $b$  belongs to  $\mathcal{Q}$  and if  $w$  is a complex number, then  $wb$  is an element of  $\mathcal{Q}$  which satisfies the identity

$$\langle wb, wb \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} = w^{-1}w \langle b, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}.$$

The set  $\mathcal{Q}$  is invariant under multiplication by complex numbers. The set  $\mathcal{Q}$  is shown to be a vector space by showing that it is closed under convex combinations.

It will be shown that  $(1 - t)a + tb$  belongs to  $\mathcal{Q}$  whenever  $a$  and  $b$  are elements of  $\mathcal{Q}$  and  $t$  is a number,  $0 < t < 1$ . Since an arbitrary pair of elements of  $\mathcal{P}$  can be written in the form  $(1 - t)a + tv$  and  $v - u$  for elements  $u$  and  $v$  of  $\mathcal{P}$ , the identity

$$\begin{aligned} & \langle (1 - t)a + tb, (1 - t)a + tb \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} + t(1 - t)\langle b - a, b - a \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} \\ &= \sup[\langle (1 - t)(a + u) + t(b + v), (1 - t)(a + u) + t(b + v) \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} \\ & \quad + t(1 - t)\langle (b + v) - (a + u), (b + v) - (a + u) \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} \\ & \quad - \langle (1 - t)u + tv, (1 - t)u + tv \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} - t(1 - t)\langle v - u, v - u \rangle_{\mathcal{P}}] \end{aligned}$$

holds with the least upper bound taken over all elements  $u$  and  $v$  of  $\mathcal{P}$ . By the convexity identity the least upper bound

$$\begin{aligned} & \langle (1 - t)a + tb, (1 - t)a + tb \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} + t(1 - t)\langle b - a, b - a \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} \\ &= \sup[\langle a + u, a + u \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} - \langle u, u \rangle_{\mathcal{P}}] + \sup[\langle b + v, b + v \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} - \langle v, v \rangle_{\mathcal{P}}] \end{aligned}$$

holds over all elements  $u$  and  $v$  of  $\mathcal{P}$ . It follows that the identity

$$\begin{aligned} & \langle (1 - t)a + tb, (1 - t)a + tb \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} + t(1 - t)\langle b - a, b - a \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} \\ &= (1 - t)\langle a, a \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} + t\langle b, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} \end{aligned}$$



is satisfied.

This completes the verification that  $\mathcal{Q}$  is a vector space. It will be shown that a scalar product is defined on the space by the identity

$$4\langle a, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} = \langle a + b, a + b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} - \langle a - b, a - b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} + i\langle a + ib, a + ib \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} - i\langle a - ib, a - ib \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}.$$

Linearity and symmetry of a scalar product are verified as in the characterization of Krein spaces. The nondegeneracy of a scalar product remains to be verified.

Since the inclusion of  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$  is continuous, a self-adjoint transformation  $P$  of  $\mathcal{H}$  into itself exists which coincides with the adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ . If  $c$  is an element of  $\mathcal{H}$  and if  $a$  is an element of  $\mathcal{P}$ , the inequality

$$\langle a - Pc, a - Pc \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} \leq \langle a - Pc, a - Pc \rangle_{\mathcal{P}}$$

implies the inequality

$$\langle (1 - P)c, (1 - P)c \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} \leq \langle c, c \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} - \langle Pc, Pc \rangle_{\mathcal{P}}.$$

Equality holds since the reverse inequality follows from the definition of the self-product in  $\mathcal{Q}$ . If  $b$  is an element of  $\mathcal{Q}$  and if  $c$  is an element of  $\mathcal{H}$ , the inequality

$$\langle b - c, b - c \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} \leq \langle Pc, Pc \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} + \langle b - (1 - P)c, b - (1 - P)c \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}$$

can be written

$$\langle b, b \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} - \langle b, c \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} - \langle c, b \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} \leq \langle b, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} - \langle b, (1 - P)c \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} - \langle (1 - P)c, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}.$$

Since  $b$  can be replaced by  $wb$  for every complex number  $w$ , the identity

$$\langle b, c \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} = \langle b, (1 - P)c \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}$$

is satisfied. The nondegeneracy of a scalar product follows in the space  $\mathcal{Q}$ . The space  $\mathcal{Q}$  is contained continuously in the space  $\mathcal{H}$  since  $1 - P$  coincides with the adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{Q}$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}$ .

The intersection of  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{Q}$  is considered as a vector space  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}$  with scalar product

$$\langle a, b \rangle_{\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}} = \langle a, b \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} + \langle a, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}.$$

Linearity and symmetry of a scalar product are immediate, but nondegeneracy requires verification. If  $c$  is an element of  $\mathcal{H}$ ,

$$P(1 - P)c = (1 - P)Pc$$

is an element of  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}$  which satisfies the identity

$$\langle a, P(1 - P)c \rangle_{\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}} = \langle a, c \rangle_{\mathcal{H}}$$

for every element  $a$  of  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}$ . Nondegeneracy of a scalar product in  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}$  follows from nondegeneracy of the scalar product in  $\mathcal{H}$ . The space  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}$  is contained continuously in the space  $\mathcal{H}$ . The self-adjoint transformation  $P(1 - P)$  in  $\mathcal{H}$  coincides with the adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ . The inequality

$$0 \leq \langle c, c \rangle_{\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}}$$

holds for every element  $c$  of  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}$  since the identity

$$0 = c - c$$

with  $c$  in  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $-c$  in  $\mathcal{Q}$  implies the inequality

$$0 \leq \langle c, c \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} + \langle c, c \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}.$$

The intersection space is shown to be a Hilbert space by showing that it is complete in the metric topology defined by its norm. A Cauchy sequence of elements  $c_n$  of the intersection space converges in the weak topology of  $\mathcal{P}$ . The limit is an element  $c$  of  $\mathcal{P}$  such that the identity

$$\langle c, a \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} = \lim \langle c_n, a \rangle_{\mathcal{P}}$$

holds for every element  $a$  of  $\mathcal{P}$ . The identity

$$\langle c, c \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} = \lim \langle c_n, c_n \rangle_{\mathcal{P}}$$

is satisfied. The identity

$$\langle c, a \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} = \lim \langle c_n, a \rangle_{\mathcal{H}}$$

holds for every element  $a$  of  $\mathcal{H}$ . The identity

$$\langle c, c \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} = \lim \langle c_n, c_n \rangle_{\mathcal{H}}$$

is satisfied.

Since the limit

$$\lim \langle c_n, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}$$

exists for every element  $b$  of  $\mathcal{Q}$  and since the limit

$$\lim \langle c_n, c_n \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}$$

exists,  $c$  is an element of  $\mathcal{Q}$  which is the limit of the elements  $c_n$  in the metric topology of  $\mathcal{Q}$ . The element  $c$  of the intersection space is the limit of the elements  $c_n$  of the intersection space in the metric topology of the space.

The Cartesian product of  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{Q}$  is isomorphic to the Cartesian product of  $\mathcal{H}$  and  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}$ . If  $a$  is an element of  $\mathcal{P}$  and if  $b$  is an element of  $\mathcal{Q}$ , a unique element  $c$  of  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}$  exists such that the identity

$$\langle a - c, a - c \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} + \langle b + c, b + c \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} = \langle a + b, a + b \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} + \langle c, c \rangle_{\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}}$$

is satisfied. Every element of the Cartesian product of  $\mathcal{H}$  and  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}$  is a pair  $(a + b, c)$  for elements  $a$  of  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $b$  of  $\mathcal{Q}$  for such an element  $c$  of  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}$ . Since  $\mathcal{H}$  is a Krein space and since  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}$  is a Hilbert space, the Cartesian product of  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{Q}$  is a Krein space. Since  $\mathcal{P}$  is a Krein space, it follows that  $\mathcal{Q}$  is a Krein space.

The existence of a Krein space  $\mathcal{Q}$  with the desired properties has now been verified. Uniqueness is proved by showing that a Krein space  $\mathcal{Q}'$  with these properties is isometrically equal to the space  $\mathcal{Q}$  constructed. Such a space  $\mathcal{Q}'$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{Q}$ . The self-adjoint transformation  $1 - P$  in  $\mathcal{H}$  coincides with the adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{Q}'$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ . The space  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}'$  is a Hilbert space which is contained contractively in the Hilbert space  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}$ . Since the inclusion is isometric on the range of  $P(1 - P)$ , which is dense in both spaces, the space  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}'$  is isometrically equal to the space  $\mathcal{P} \wedge \mathcal{Q}$ . Since the Cartesian product of  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{Q}'$  is isomorphic to the Cartesian product of  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{Q}$ , the spaces  $\mathcal{Q}$  and  $\mathcal{Q}'$  are isometrically equal.

This completes the proof of the theorem.

The space  $\mathcal{Q}$  is called the complementary space to  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ . The space  $\mathcal{P}$  is recovered as the complementary space to the space  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ . The decomposition of an element  $c$  of  $\mathcal{H}$  as  $c = a + b$  with  $a$  an element of  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $b$  an element of  $\mathcal{Q}$  such that equality hold in the inequality

$$\langle c, c \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} \leq \langle a, a \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} + \langle b, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}$$

is unique. The minimal decomposition results when  $a$  is obtained from  $c$  under the adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$  and  $b$  is obtained from  $c$  under the adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ .

A construction is made of complementary subspaces whose inclusion in the full space have adjoints coinciding with given self-adjoint transformations.

**Theorem 14.** *If a self-adjoint transformation  $P$  of a Krein space into itself satisfies the inequality*

$$P^2 \leq P,$$

*then unique Krein spaces  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{Q}$  exist, which are contained continuously and contractively in  $\mathcal{H}$  and which are complementary spaces in  $\mathcal{H}$ , such that  $P$  coincides with the adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$  and  $1 - P$  coincides with the adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ .*

*Proof of Theorem 14.* The proof repeats the construction of a complementary space under a weaker hypothesis. The range of  $P$  is considered as a vector space  $\mathcal{P}'$  with scalar product determined by the identity

$$\langle Pc, Pc \rangle_{\mathcal{P}'} = \langle Pc, c \rangle_{\mathcal{H}},$$

for every element  $c$  of  $\mathcal{H}$ . The space  $\mathcal{P}'$  is contained continuously and contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}$ . The transformation  $P$  coincides with the adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{P}'$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ . A Krein space  $\mathcal{Q}$ , which is contained continuously and contractively in  $\mathcal{H}$ , is defined as the set of elements  $b$  of  $\mathcal{H}$  such that the least upper bound

$$\langle b, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} = \sup[\langle a + b, a + b \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} - \langle a, a \rangle_{\mathcal{P}'}]$$

taken over all elements  $a$  of  $\mathcal{P}'$  is finite. The adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$  coincides with  $1 - P$ . The complementary space to  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$  is a Krein space  $\mathcal{P}$  which contains the space  $\mathcal{P}'$  isometrically and which is contained continuously and contractively in  $\mathcal{H}$ . The adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$  coincides with  $1 - P$ .

This completes the proof of the theorem.

A factorization of continuous and contractive transformations in Krein spaces is an application of complementation theory.

**Theorem 15.** *The kernel of a continuous and contractive transformation  $T$  of a Krein space  $\mathcal{P}$  into a Krein space  $\mathcal{Q}$  is a Hilbert space which is contained continuously and isometrically in  $\mathcal{P}$  and whose orthogonal complement in  $\mathcal{P}$  is mapped isometrically onto a Krein space which is contained continuously and contractively in  $\mathcal{Q}$ .*

*Proof of Theorem 15.* Since the transformation  $T$  of  $\mathcal{P}$  into  $\mathcal{Q}$  is continuous and contractive, the self-adjoint transformation  $P = TT^*$  in  $\mathcal{Q}$  satisfies the inequality  $P^2 \leq P$ . A unique Krein space  $\mathcal{M}$ , which is contained continuously and contractively in  $\mathcal{Q}$ , exists such that  $\mathcal{P}$  coincides with the adjoint of the inclusion of  $\mathcal{M}$  in  $\mathcal{Q}$ . It will be shown that  $T$  maps  $\mathcal{P}$  contractively into  $\mathcal{M}$ .

If  $a$  is an element of  $\mathcal{P}$  and if  $b$  is an element of  $\mathcal{Q}$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} & \langle Ta + (1 - P)b, Ta + (1 - P)b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} \\ &= \langle T(a - T^*b), T(a - T^*b) \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} + \langle b, T(a - T^*b) \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} + \langle T(a - T^*b), b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} \end{aligned}$$

is less than or equal to

$$\begin{aligned} & \langle a - T^*b, a - T^*b \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} + \langle b, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} + \langle T^*b, a - T^*b \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} + \langle a - T^*b, T^*b \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} \\ &= \langle a, a \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} + \langle (1 - TT^*)b, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $b$  is an arbitrary element of  $\mathcal{Q}$ ,  $Ta$  is an element of  $\mathcal{M}$  which satisfies the inequality

$$\langle Ta, Ta \rangle_{\mathcal{M}} \leq \langle a, a \rangle_{\mathcal{P}}.$$

Equality holds when  $a = T^*b$  for an element  $b$  of  $\mathcal{Q}$  since

$$\langle TT^*b, TT^*b \rangle_{\mathcal{M}} = \langle TT^*b, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}} = \langle T^*b, T^*b \rangle_{\mathcal{P}}.$$

Since the transformation of  $\mathcal{P}$  into  $\mathcal{M}$  is continuous, the adjoint transformation is an isometry. The range of the adjoint transformation is a Krein space which is contained continuously and isometrically in  $\mathcal{P}$  and whose orthogonal complement is the kernel of  $T$ . Since  $T$  is contractive, the kernel of  $T$  is a Hilbert space.

This completes the proof of the theorem.

A continuous transformation of a Krein space  $\mathcal{P}$  into a Krein space  $\mathcal{Q}$  is said to be a partial isometry if its kernel is a Krein space which is contained continuously and isometrically in  $\mathcal{P}$  and whose orthogonal complement is mapped isometrically into  $\mathcal{Q}$ . A partially isometric transformation of a Krein space into a Krein space is contractive if, and only if, its kernel is a Hilbert space. Complementation is preserved under contractive partially isometric transformations of a Krein space onto a Krein space.

**Theorem 16.** *If a contractive partially isometric transformation  $T$  maps a Krein space  $\mathcal{H}$  onto a Krein space  $\mathcal{H}'$  and if Krein spaces  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{Q}$  are contained continuously and contractively as complementary subspaces of  $\mathcal{H}$ , then Krein spaces  $\mathcal{P}'$  and  $\mathcal{Q}'$ , which are contained continuously and contractively as complementary subspaces of  $\mathcal{H}'$ , exist such that  $T$  acts as a contractive partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{P}$  onto  $\mathcal{P}'$  and of  $\mathcal{Q}$  onto  $\mathcal{Q}'$ .*

*Proof of Theorem 16.* Since the Krein spaces  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{Q}$  are contained continuously and contractively in  $\mathcal{H}$  and since  $T$  is a continuous and contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{H}$  into  $\mathcal{H}'$ ,  $T$  acts as a continuous and contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{P}$  into  $\mathcal{H}'$  and of  $\mathcal{Q}$  into  $\mathcal{H}'$ . Krein spaces  $\mathcal{P}'$  and  $\mathcal{Q}'$ , which are contained continuously and contractively in  $\mathcal{H}'$ , exist such that  $T$  acts as a contractive partially isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{P}$  onto  $\mathcal{P}'$  and of  $\mathcal{Q}$  onto  $\mathcal{Q}'$ . It will be shown that  $\mathcal{P}'$  and  $\mathcal{Q}'$  are complementary subspaces of  $\mathcal{H}'$ .

An element  $a$  of  $\mathcal{P}'$  is of the form  $Ta$  for an element  $a$  of  $\mathcal{P}$  such that

$$\langle Ta, Ta \rangle_{\mathcal{P}'} = \langle a, a \rangle_{\mathcal{P}}.$$

An element  $b$  of  $\mathcal{Q}'$  is of the form  $Tb$  for an element  $b$  of  $\mathcal{Q}$  such that

$$\langle Tb, Tb \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}'} = \langle b, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}.$$

The element  $c = a + b$  of  $\mathcal{H}$  satisfies the inequalities

$$\langle c, c \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} \leq \langle a, a \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} + \langle b, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}$$

and

$$\langle Tc, Tc \rangle_{\mathcal{H}'} \leq \langle c, c \rangle_{\mathcal{H}}.$$

The element  $Tc = Ta + Tb$  of  $\mathcal{H}'$  satisfies the inequality

$$\langle Tc, Tc \rangle_{\mathcal{H}'} \leq \langle Ta, Ta \rangle_{\mathcal{P}'} + \langle Tb, Tb \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}'}$$

An element of  $\mathcal{H}'$  is of the form  $Tc$  for an element  $c$  of  $\mathcal{H}$  such that

$$\langle Tc, Tc \rangle_{\mathcal{H}'} = \langle c, c \rangle_{\mathcal{H}}.$$

An element  $a$  of  $\mathcal{P}$  and an element  $b$  of  $\mathcal{Q}$  exist such that  $c = a + b$  and

$$\langle c, c \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} = \langle a, a \rangle_{\mathcal{P}} + \langle b, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}}.$$

Since the element  $Ta$  of  $\mathcal{P}'$  satisfies the inequality

$$\langle Ta, Ta \rangle_{\mathcal{P}'} \leq \langle a, a \rangle_{\mathcal{P}}$$

and since the element  $Tb$  of  $\mathcal{Q}'$  satisfies the inequality

$$\langle Tb, Tb \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}'} \leq \langle b, b \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}},$$

the element  $Tc$  of  $\mathcal{H}$  satisfies the inequality

$$\langle Tc, Tc \rangle_{\mathcal{H}'} \geq \langle Ta, Ta \rangle_{\mathcal{P}'} + \langle Tb, Tb \rangle_{\mathcal{Q}'}$$

Equality holds since the reverse inequality is satisfied.

This completes the proof of the theorem.

A canonical linear system which is conjugate isometric and whose state space is a Krein space is constructed whose transfer function is a given power series  $W(z)$  with operator coefficients when multiplication by  $W(z)$  is densely defined as a transformation with domain and range in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ .

A self-adjoint transformation  $H$  with domain and range in the Cartesian product  $\mathcal{C}(z) \times \mathcal{C}(z)$  is defined by taking  $(f(z), g(z))$  into  $(u(z), v(z))$  when multiplication by  $W(z)$  takes  $f(z)$  into  $v(z)$  and the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  takes  $g(z)$  into  $u(z)$ . The spectral subspace of contractivity for the self-adjoint transformation  $H$  is an invariant subspace in which the restriction of  $H$  is contractive and whose orthogonal complement is an invariant subspace in which the inverse of  $H$  is contractive. Eigenfunctions for the eigenvalues one and minus one are included in the spectral subspace of contractivity for the transformation  $H$ .

The existence and uniqueness of the spectral subspace of contractivity for the self-adjoint transformation  $H$  are given by the Hilbert construction of invariant subspaces for the isometric transformation

$$(H - w^-)^{-1}(H - w)$$

of the Cartesian product space  $\mathcal{C}(z) \times \mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself when  $w$  is a nonreal number. The construction is independent of the choice of  $w$ .

An element of the spectral subspace of contractivity for  $H$  is the sum of an element  $(f(z), g(z))$  for which  $g(z)$  vanishes and an element  $(f(z), g(z))$  for which  $f(z)$  vanishes.

An element of the orthogonal complement of the spectral subspace of contractivity for  $H$  is the sum of an element  $(f(z), g(z))$  for which  $g(z)$  vanishes and an element  $(f(z), g(z))$  for which  $f(z)$  vanishes.

The spectral subspace of contractivity for multiplication by  $W(z)$  is defined as the set of elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $(f(z), 0)$  belongs to the spectral subspace of contractivity for  $H$ .

The spectral subspace of contractivity for the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  is the set of elements  $g(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $(0, g(z))$  belongs to the spectral subspace of contractivity for  $H$ .

Since multiplication by  $z$  is an isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself which commutes with multiplication by  $W(z)$ , the adjoint transformation which takes  $f(z)$  into  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the spectral subspace of contractivity for the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  into itself. The transformation which takes  $f(z)$  into  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the orthogonal complement of the spectral subspace of contractivity for multiplication by  $W(z)$

onto itself. The spectral subspace of contractivity for multiplication by  $W(z)$  contains  $zf(z)$  for an element  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  if, and only if, it contains  $f(z)$ . The orthogonal complement of the spectral subspace of contractivity for the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  contains  $zf(z)$  for an element  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  if, and only if, it contains  $f(z)$ .

Since multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a contractive transformation of the spectral subspace of contractivity for multiplication by  $W(z)$  into the spectral subspace of contractivity for the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$ , it acts as a partially isometric transformation of the spectral subspace of contractivity for multiplication by  $W(z)$  onto a Hilbert space which is contained contractively in the spectral subspace of contractivity for the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$ . The complementary space in the spectral subspace of contractivity for the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  of the image of the spectral subspace of contractivity for multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{P}$  which is contained contractively in the spectral subspace of contractivity for the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$ .

Since the inverse of multiplication by  $W(z)$  is an injective and contractive transformation of the orthogonal complement of the spectral subspace of contractivity for the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  into the orthogonal complement of the spectral subspace of contractivity for multiplication by  $W(z)$ , it acts as an isometric transformation of the orthogonal complement of the spectral subspace of contractivity for the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  onto a Hilbert space which is contained contractively in the orthogonal complement of the spectral subspace of contractivity for multiplication by  $W(z)$ . The complementary space in the orthogonal complement of the spectral subspace of contractivity for multiplication by  $W(z)$  in the image of the orthogonal complement of the spectral subspace of contractivity for the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{Q}$  which is contained contractively in the orthogonal complement of the spectral subspace of contractivity for multiplication by  $W(z)$ .

A transformation is defined of the set of elements of the spectral subspace of contractivity for multiplication by  $W(z)$  which are orthogonal to the elements with constant coefficient zero into the space  $\mathcal{Q}$  is defined by taking  $f(z)$  into  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$ . The elements of  $\mathcal{Q}$  obtained are included isometrically in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ .

A transformation is defined of the set of elements of the orthogonal complement of the spectral subspace of contractivity for the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  which are orthogonal to the elements with constant coefficient zero into the space  $\mathcal{P}$  is defined by taking  $f(z)$  into  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$ . The elements of  $\mathcal{P}$  obtained are included isometrically in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ .

The augmented space  $\mathcal{P}'$  is the set of elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  belongs to  $\mathcal{P}$  with scalar product determined by the identity for difference quotients

$$\|[f(z) - f(0)]/z\|_{\mathcal{P}}^2 = \|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{P}'}^2 - |f(0)|^2.$$

The space  $\mathcal{P}$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{P}'$ . The elements of the orthogonal complement of the spectral subspace of contractivity for the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  which are orthogonal to elements with constant coefficient zero belongs to  $\mathcal{P}'$  and are orthogonal to  $\mathcal{P}$ . They are elements of the complementary space to  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{P}'$  which are

included isometrically in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  and whose orthogonal complement is the set of elements of the complementary space to  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{P}'$  which belong to the spectral subspace of contractivity for the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$ . Multiplication by  $W(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the set of elements of the spectral subspace of contractivity for multiplication by  $W(z)$  which are orthogonal to elements with constant coefficient zero onto the set of elements of the complementary space to  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{P}'$  which belong to the spectral subspace of contractivity for the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$ .

The augmented space  $\mathcal{Q}'$  is the set of elements  $f(z)$  of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  such that  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  belongs to  $\mathcal{Q}$  with scalar product determined by the identity for difference quotients

$$\|[f(z) - f(0)]/z\|_{\mathcal{Q}}^2 = \|f(z)\|_{\mathcal{Q}'}^2 - |f(0)|^2.$$

The space  $\mathcal{Q}$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{Q}'$ . The elements of the spectral subspace of contractivity for multiplication by  $W(z)$  which are orthogonal to elements with constant coefficient zero belong to  $\mathcal{Q}'$  and are orthogonal to  $\mathcal{Q}$ . They are elements of the complementary space to  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{Q}'$  which are included isometrically in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  and whose orthogonal complement is the set of elements of the complementary space to  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{Q}'$  which belong to the orthogonal complement of the spectral subspace of contractivity for multiplication by  $W(z)$ . The inverse of multiplication by  $W(z)$  acts as an isometric transformation of the set of elements of the orthogonal complement of the spectral subspace of contractivity for the adjoint of multiplication by  $W(z)$  which are orthogonal to elements with constant coefficient zero onto the set of elements of the complementary space to  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{Q}'$  which belong to the orthogonal complement of the spectral subspace of contractivity for multiplication by  $W(z)$ .

Multiplication by  $W(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the complementary space to  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{Q}'$  onto the complementary space to  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{P}'$ . An injective and contractive transformation of the complementary space to  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{Q}'$  into the coefficient space is defined by taking a power series into its constant coefficient. Since the dimension of the complementary space to  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{Q}'$  does not exceed the dimension of the coefficient space, a power series  $V(z)$  with operator coefficients exists such that multiplication by  $V(z)$  is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself and such that multiplication by  $V(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the coefficient space onto the complementary space to  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{Q}'$ . The space  $\mathcal{Q}$  is isometrically equal to the state space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$  of a canonical linear system which is conjugate isometric and has transfer function  $V(z)$ .

Multiplication by the power series

$$U(z) = W(z)V(z)$$

with operator coefficients is a contractive transformation of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  onto itself which acts as a partially isometric transformation of the coefficient space onto the complementary space to  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{P}'$ . The space  $\mathcal{P}$  is isometrically equal to the state space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  of a canonical linear system which is conjugate isometric and has transfer function  $U(z)$ .

The spaces  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  and  $\mathcal{H}(V)$  are applied in the construction of a canonical linear system which is conjugate isometric and whose transfer function is  $W(z)$ . The state space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  of the linear system is a Krein space.



**Theorem 17.** *If  $W(z)$  is a power series with operator coefficients such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  is densely defined as a transformation with domain and range in  $\mathcal{C}(z)$ , then  $W(z)$  is the transfer function of a canonical linear system which is conjugate isometric and whose state space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$  is a Krein space. Power series  $V(z)$  and*

$$U(z) = W(z)V(z)$$

*with operator coefficients exist such that multiplication by  $U(z)$  and multiplication by  $V(z)$  are contractive transformations of  $\mathcal{C}(z)$  into itself, such that the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  is contained contractively in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ , and such that multiplication by  $W(z)$  is an anti-isometric transformation of the space  $\mathcal{H}(V)$  onto the orthogonal complement of the space  $\mathcal{H}(U)$  in the space  $\mathcal{H}(W)$ .*

*Proof of Theorem 17.* It will be shown that the Krein space  $\mathcal{H}$  which is the orthogonal sum of the Hilbert space  $\mathcal{P}$  and the anti-isometric image of the Hilbert space  $\mathcal{Q}$  under multiplication by  $W(z)$  is the state space of a canonical linear system which is conjugate isometric and has transfer function  $W(z)$ .

The augmented space  $\mathcal{H}'$  is defined as the set of power series  $f(z)$  with vector coefficients such that  $[f(z) - f(0)]/z$  belongs to  $\mathcal{H}$  with scalar product determined by the identity for difference quotients

$$\langle [f(z) - f(0)]/z, [f(z) - f(0)]/z \rangle_{\mathcal{H}} = \langle f(z), f(z) \rangle_{\mathcal{H}'} - |f(0)|^2.$$

The augmented space  $\mathcal{H}'$  is a Krein space which is the orthogonal sum of the augmented Hilbert space  $\mathcal{P}'$  and the anti-isometric image of the Hilbert space  $\mathcal{Q}$  under multiplication by  $zW(z)$ .

The Hilbert space  $\mathcal{P}$  is contained contractively in the Krein space  $\mathcal{H}'$ . The complementary space to  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}'$  is the orthogonal sum of a Hilbert space, which is the partially isometric image of the coefficient space under multiplication by

$$U(z) = W(z)V(z),$$

and the anti-isometric image of the Hilbert space  $\mathcal{Q}$  under multiplication by  $zW(z)$ .

The partially isometric image of the coefficient space under multiplication by  $U(z)$  is the partially isometric image under multiplication by  $W(z)$  of the complementary space to  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{Q}'$ .

Multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a partially anti-isometric transformation of the augmented Hilbert space  $\mathcal{Q}'$  onto the complementary space to  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}'$  whose kernel is the complementary space to  $\mathcal{Q}$  in  $\mathcal{Q}'$ . Multiplication by  $W(z)$  is an anti-isometric transformation of  $\mathcal{Q}$  into the complementary space to  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}$ .

Multiplication by  $W(z)$  acts as a partially isometric transformation of the coefficient space onto the complementary space to the image of  $\mathcal{Q}$  in the complementary space to  $\mathcal{P}$  in  $\mathcal{H}'$ . This verifies that the Krein space  $\mathcal{H}$  is contained contractively in the augmented Krein space  $\mathcal{H}'$  and that multiplication by  $W(z)$  is a partially isometric transformation of the coefficient space onto the complementary space to  $\mathcal{H}$  in  $\mathcal{H}'$ .

This completes the proof of the theorem.